



4

“AUTHORIZED TEXT-BOOKS.”

AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

Intended as an Elementary Drill Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language, and as an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader, and Composition. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 162 Pages.

A LATIN GRAMMAR.

For Schools and Colleges. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 355 Pages.

A LATIN READER.

Intended as a Companion to the author's Latin Grammar; with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 212 Pages.

A FIRST GREEK BOOK.

Comprising an Outline of the Forms and Inflections of the Language, a complete Analytical Syntax, and an Introductory Greek Reader, with Notes and Vocabularies. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University, author of Harkness's Latin Grammar, &c., &c.

12mo. 276 Pages.

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.,

PUBLISHERS,

17 and 19 KING STREET EAST, TORONTO.

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges.

By A. HARKNESS, PH.D., Professor in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface :

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language ; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.
2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.
3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.
4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.
5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.
6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.
7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

1/4

and cut at the Cost 10

Wm. Clinton





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

The "AUTHORIZED TEXT BOOK" Series.

A N

INTRODUCTORY

L A T I N B O O K,

INTENDED AS AN

ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,

ON THE

INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER, AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

B Y

ALBERT HARKNESS,

Professor in Brown University,

AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

TORONTO:

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.,

17 & 19 KING STREET EAST.

1868.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

P R E F A C E.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rule and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

C O N T E N T S.



P A R T F I R S T.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

P A R T S E C O N D.

ETYMOLOGY.

C H A P T E R I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension	28
Exercise XI.	29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions	30
Exercise XII.	33
Third Declension	35
Exercise XIII.	37
Comparison of Adjectives	38
Exercise XIV.	39
Numeral Adjectives	40
Exercise XV.	42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns	43
Possessive	44
Demonstrative	44
Relative	45
Interrogative	46
Indefinite	46
Exercise XVI.	47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices	48
Moods	49
Tenses	50
Numbers	50
Persons	51
Conjugation	51
The Verb Sum	52
Exercise XVII.	56
" XVIII.	57
" XIX.	60
First Conjugation	62
Exercise XX.	66

CONTENTS.

vii

	Page.
Exercise XXI.	67
" XXII.	69
" XXIII.	71
" XXIV.	73
" XXV.	74
" XXVI.	75
" XXVII.	76
Second Conjugation	78
Exercise XXVIII.	82
" XXIX.	83
" XXX.	84
" XXXI.	85
" XXXII.	86
" XXXIII.	87
" XXXIV.	88
Third Conjugation	90
Exercise XXXV.	94
" XXXVI.	95
" XXXVII.	96
" XXXVIII.	97
" XXXIX.	97
" XL.	98
" XLI.	99
Fourth Conjugation	100
Exercise XLII.	104
" XLIII.	104
" XLIV.	105
" XLV.	106
" XLVI.	107
" XLVII.	107
" XLVIII.	108
Verbs in 10	110
Exercise XLIX.	112

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER L

Section

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

I. Classification of Sentences	114
II. Simple Sentences	115

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

Section.		Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns	117
	Exercise L.	117
	“ LI.	119
II.	Nominative	120
	Exercise LII.	120
III.	Vocative	121
	Exercise LIII.	121
IV.	Accusative	122
	Exercise LIV.	123
	“ LV.	124
	“ LVI.	125
V.	Dative	126
	Exercise LVII.	127
	“ LVIII.	129
VI.	Genitive	130
	Exercise LIX.	131
	“ LX.	132
VII.	Ablative	133
	Exercise LXI.	135
	“ LXII.	137
	“ LXIII.	138
	“ LXIV.	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions	141
	Exercise LXV.	142
Suggestions to the Learner	. . . . .	143
Latin-English Vocabulary	. . . . .	147
English-Latin Vocabulary	. . . . .	157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl.	. . . . .	ablative.	n.	. . . . .	neuter.
acc.	. . . . .	accusative.	nom.	. . . . .	nominative.
act.	. . . . .	active.	p.	. . . . .	page.
adv.	. . . . .	adverb.	part.	. . . . .	particle.
conj.	. . . . .	conjunction.	pass.	. . . . .	passive.
dat.	. . . . .	dative.	pers.	. . . . .	person.
f.	. . . . .	feminine.	plur., or pl.	. . . . .	plural.
gen.	. . . . .	genitive.	prep.	. . . . .	preposition.
indef.	. . . . .	indefinite.	rel.	. . . . .	relative.
interrog.	. . . . .	interrogative.	sing.	. . . . .	singular.
m.	. . . . .	masculine.	voc.	. . . . .	vocative.



INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.¹

ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes:

I. <i>Vowels</i>	. . . . .	a, e, i, o, u, y.
II. <i>Consonants:</i> —		
1. Liquids	. . . . .	l, m, n, r.
2. Spirants	. . . . .	h, s.
3. Mutes: 1) Labials	. . . . .	p, b, f, v.
2) Palatals	. . . . .	c, g, k, q, j.
3) Linguals	. . . . .	t, d.
4. Double Consonants	. . . . .	x, z.

4. **Combinations of Letters.**—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*,—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*,—*x*=*cs* or *gs*; *z*=*ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

¹ Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

I. ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their *long* or *short* English sounds.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds —*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:² *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.³

3. In penultimate⁴ and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A* unaccented has the sound of *a* final in America: *men'-sa*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound —*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

² Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

³ In these rules, no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

⁴ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys*; except *post, es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res, dī'-es, hos, a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A, e, or o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e, i, or y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ie-es, a'-e-ri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ee-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'- bri-tas*.

2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e*:

1) long: *Cae'-sar (Ce'-sar), Oe'-ta (E'-ta)*.

2) short: *Daed'-ă-lus (Ded'-a-lus), Oed'-i-pus*.

Au as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.¹

EXERCISE I.

Give the sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs in the following words.

1. Men'-sam,² men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,³ men-sa'-rum.⁴
2. Ho'-ram,⁵ ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,⁶ ho-ra'-rum.⁷
3. Scho'-la,⁸ scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum.
4. Co-ro'-na,⁸ co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.⁹

¹ *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs; but, when so used, they have the long sound of *i*: *hei, cui*.

² 8, 2; 8, 1.

⁵ 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁸ 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

³ 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

⁶ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

⁹ 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

⁴ 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁷ 7, 3; 8, 1.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae*, and *oe*: and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (*sedo*), *cī-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *caē-do*, *coē-na*, *a'-ge* (*a-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (*ka'do*), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound as in *son*, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in *time*: *tī-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (*rek'-si*), *ux'-or* (*uk'-sor*).

12. **C, S, T, and X—Aspirated.**—Before *i*, preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c, s, t*, and *x* are aspirated,—*c, s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh, x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*); *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo*, preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

13. **Silent Consonants.**—An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: *Cne'-us* (*Ne'-us*).

EXERCISE II.

Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Ci'-vis</i> , ¹ <i>civ'-i-um</i> , <i>civ'-i-bus</i> . | 2. <i>Car'-men</i> , ² <i>car'-mi-nis</i> , <i>car'-mi-ne</i> . ³ |
| 3. <i>Rex</i> , ⁴ <i>re'-gis</i> , ⁵ <i>re'-gi</i> , <i>re'-gu-m</i> . ⁵ | 4. <i>Ca'-put</i> , ⁶ <i>cap'-i-tis</i> , <i>cap'-i-tum</i> . |
| 5. <i>A'-ei-em</i> , ⁷ <i>a'-ei-e</i> , <i>a'-ei-es</i> . ⁸ | 6. <i>Ars</i> , ⁸ <i>ar'-tis</i> , <i>ar'-tes</i> , ⁸ <i>ar'-ti-um</i> . ⁹ |

¹ 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

⁶ 11, 1, and 3.

² 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

⁷ 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.

³ 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

⁸ 11, 2, 1).

⁴ 11, 4.

⁹ 12.

⁵ 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.¹1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound;² but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel-sounds are as follows:

<i>a</i>	like <i>ä</i> in father:	e.g., <i>a'-ra</i> .
<i>e</i>	" <i>ä</i> made:	" <i>ple'-bes</i> .
<i>i</i>	" <i>ē</i> me:	" <i>i'-ri</i> .
<i>o</i>	" <i>ō</i> no:	" <i>o'-ro</i> .
<i>u</i>	" <i>ō</i> do:	" <i>u'-num</i> .
<i>y</i>	" <i>ē</i> me;	" <i>Ny'-sa</i> .

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like *a* in made: e.g., *ae'-tas*, *coe'-lum*.

au " *ou* " *out*: " *au'-rum*.³

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method; but it varies somewhat in different countries.

EXERCISE III.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words,
according to the Continental Method.*

1. *Hō'-rā*, *hō'-rām*, *hō'-rās*, *hō'-rīs*, *hō'-rae*, *hō'-rā'-rūm*.
2. *Glō'-rī-ă*, *glō'-rī-ăm*, *glō'-rī-ac*. 3. *Dō'-nūm*, *dō'-nī*, *dō'-*

¹ If the *English Method* is adopted as the standard in the school, this outline of the *Continental Method* should be omitted.

² These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

³ In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately; but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs, with nearly the same sound as in English.

nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-věm,
cī'-vēs, cīv'-ī-ūm, cīv'-ī-bús.

SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel-sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus: *mo'-re*, *vi'-ce*, *a-cū'-te*, *per-suā'-de*.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long, short, or common.¹

21. **Long.**—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. **Short.**—A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *di'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hil*.²

23. **Common.**—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally³ short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri*.

24. The signs [—], [˘], ^{˘˘}, denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: [—]*ā-grō-rūm*.⁴

¹ Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

² No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

³ A vowel is said to be *naturally* short when it is short in its own *nature*; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

⁴ By referring to 14, it will be seen, that, in the Continental Method, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (26). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus, in *rēx*, *ūrb̄s*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity;

ACCENTUATION.

I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons, nos.*

* 26. Other words are accented as follows:¹

1. *Words of two syllables* — always on the first: *men'-sa.*
2. *Words of more than two syllables* — on the *penult*² if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:² *ho-nō'-ris, con'-sū-lis.*

II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity; otherwise on the third: *mon'-u-e'-runt, mon'-u-e-ra'-mus, in-stau'-ra-re'-runt.*

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cen-tis'-si-mus.*

EXERCISE IV.

Accent and pronounce the following Words.

1. *Cōrōnā,³ cōrōnae, cōrōnārūm.⁴*
2. *Gemmae,⁵ gemmām, gemmārūm.*
3. *Sāpientiae,⁶ āmicītiae, justītiae, glōriae.⁷*

but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *ăvē, mărē*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 26), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

¹ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

² Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

³ 26, 2; 7, 3, 1). ⁵ 11, 1; 26, 1. ⁷ 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

⁴ 26, 2; 27. ⁶ 27; 8, 3, 1); 12.

4. *Sāpientiām, āmīcitiām, justitiām, glōriām.* 5. *Sāpientiā, āmīcitiā, justitiā, glōriā.*

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech¹ are — *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

31. A Noun, or Substantive, is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro, Cicero; Rōma, Rome; puer, boy; dōmus, house.*

1. A Proper Noun is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicēro, Rōma.*

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir, man; ēquus, horse.*

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

GENDER.

33. There are three genders,² — *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

¹ Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech.*

² In English, *Gender* denotes *sex.* Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males;* feminine nouns, *females;* and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female.* In Latin, however, this natural distinction

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprilis*, April.

II. FEMININE.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pīrus*, pear-tree.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:¹

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the possessive case (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form, the several cases are, in general, distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*, in *neuters*, are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin, there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

Genitive Endings.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
<i>æ</i> ,	<i>i</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>ei</i> . ¹

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem² may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

¹ See 119, 1.

² The *stem* is the basis of the word, or the part to which the several endings are added to form the various cases. Thus in the forms, *mensā*, *mensae*, *mensūm*, *mensīs*, &c., given under 42, it will be observed that *mens* remains unchanged; and that, by the addition of the endings, *a*, *æ*, *am*, *is*, &c., to it, the several cases are formed. Here *mens* is the *stem*; and *a*, *æ*, *am*, *is*, &c., are the *case-endings*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ē,—*feminine*; ās and ēs,—*masculine*.¹

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensă,</i>	<i>a table,</i>	ă
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>of a table,</i>	ae
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>to, for, a table,</i>	ae
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensām,</i>	<i>a table,</i>	ăm
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensă,</i>	<i>O table,</i>	ă
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>with, from, by, a table,</i>	ă

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensārum,</i>	<i>of tables,</i>	ărūm
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensīs,</i>	<i>to, for, tables,</i>	īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensās,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	ăs
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>O tables,</i>	ae
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensīs,</i>	<i>with, from, by, tables,</i>	īs.

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—With these endings decline:

Ala, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victōria*, victory.

EXERCISE V.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Amicitiā,</i>	<i>ae,² f.³</i>	<i>friendship.</i>
<i>Cōrōnā,</i>	<i>ae, f.</i>	<i>crown.</i>

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

² The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiæ*.

³ Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

Gemmā	ae, <i>f.</i>	gem.
Gloriā,	ae, <i>f.</i>	glory.
Horā,	ae, <i>f.</i>	hour.
Justitiā,	ae, <i>f.</i>	justice.
Sapientiā,	ae, <i>f.</i>	wisdom.
Scholā,	ae, <i>f.</i>	school.

II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnā,¹ corōnā, corōnac,² corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmā, gemmā, gemmae, geminam, gemmārum, gemnis, gemmas. 3. Sapientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, gloriā. 4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam. 5. Sapientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of³ friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a⁴ crown, of a gem. 11. Crowns, gems. 12. With the⁴ crowns, with the gems. 13. Of crowns, of gems.

¹ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

² When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnac* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

³ The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

⁴ The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown*, *a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

ěr, īr, ūs, os, — *masculine*; **ūm, on**, — *neuter*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave*. Puer, *boy*. Ager, *field*. Templum, *temple*.

SINGULAR.

N. serv <small>as</small>	pu <small>er</small>	äg <small>er</small>	templ <small>um</small>
G. serv <small>i</small>	pu <small>erī</small>	ägr <small>i</small>	templ <small>i</small>
D. serv <small>ō</small>	pu <small>erō</small>	ägr <small>ō</small>	templ <small>ō</small>
A. serv <small>um</small>	pu <small>erūm</small>	ägr <small>ūm</small>	templ <small>ūm</small>
V. serv <small>ē</small>	pu <small>er</small>	äg <small>er</small>	templ <small>um</small>
A. serv <small>ō</small>	pu <small>erō</small>	ägr <small>ō</small>	templ <small>ō</small>

PLURAL.

N. serv <small>i</small>	pu <small>erī</small>	ägr <small>i</small>	templ <small>ā</small>
G. serv <small>ōrum</small>	pu <small>erōrum</small>	ägr <small>ōrum</small>	templ <small>ōrum</small>
D. serv <small>is</small>	pu <small>erīs</small>	ägr <small>is</small>	templ <small>is</small>
A. serv <small>ōs</small>	pu <small>erōs</small>	ägr <small>ōs</small>	templ <small>ā</small>
V. serv <small>i</small>	pu <small>erī</small>	ägr <small>i</small>	templ <small>ā</small>
A. serv <small>īs.</small>	pu <small>erīs.</small>	ägr <small>īs.</small>	templ <small>īs.</small>

1. Case-Endings. — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen that they are declined with the following

Case-endings.

1. ūs. 2. īr. 3. ūm.

SINGULAR.

N. ūs	— ¹	ūm
G. ī	ī	ī
D. ū	ō	ō
A. ūm	ūm	ūm
V. ī	— ¹	ūm
A. ū	ō	ō

¹ The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*: thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puerūs*.

PLURAL.

N. ī	ī	ā
G. ūrūm	ōrūm	ōrūm
D. īs	īs	īs
A. ūs	ōs	ă
V. ī	ī	ă
A. īs.	īs.	īs.

2. Examples for Practice.—Like *SERVUS*: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master.—Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law.—Like *AGER*: *fāber*, artisan; *magister*, master.—Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. Paradigms.—Observe

- 1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voe.: Nom. *puer* for *puērus*, Voc. *puer* for *puēre*.
- 2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.
- 3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38, 3.

EXERCISE VI.

I. Vocabulary.

Dōnūm, ī, n.	gift.
Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.	son-in-law.
Lībēr, lībrī, m.	book.
Ocūlūs, ī, m.	eye.
Praeceptūm, ī, n.	rule, prcept.
Sōcēr, sōcērī, m.	father-in-law.
Týrannūs, ī, m.	tyrant.
Verbūm, ī, n.	word.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ocūlus, ocūli, ocūlo, ocūlum, ocūle, oculōrum, ocūlis, ocūlos.
2. Socer, socēri, socēro, socērum, socerōrum, socēris, socēros.
3. Servi, tyranni.
4. Puēri, genēri.
5. Agri, libri.
6. Templi, doni.
7. Servo, tyranno.
8. Puērum, genērum.
9. Agrōrum, librōrum.
10. Templa, dona.
11. Servum, servos.
12. Genēri, generōrum.
13. Agri, agrō-

rum. 14. *Dono*, donis. 15. *Verbum*, praeceptum. 16. *Verbi*, praecepti.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves.
3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts. 11. The tyrant, the boy, the book, the precept. 12. Of the tyrant, of the boy, of the book, of the precept.

SECOND DECLENSION—CONTINUED.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:¹

Cluilius rex mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. *Urbes Cartāgo atque Nūmantia*, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cie.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline² it.
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,³ and the Rule for it.

¹ A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius,— *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added—*Cluilius* in the example—is called the *subject* of the appositive.

² Adjectives in the Comparative or in the Superlative degree (160) should also be compared (162).

³ By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regina*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

M O D E L.

Artēmisiā rēgīnā, Artemisia the queen.

Regīna is a noun (31) of the First Declension (42), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *regīn* (41). Singular: *regīna, regīnac, regīnae, regīnam, regīnā, regīnā*. Plural: *regīnae, regīnārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 35, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in case, according to Rule II.: “An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE.”

EXERCISE VII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cāiūs, ii, m.	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
Filiā, ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
Hastā, ae, f.	<i>spear</i> .
Pisistratūs, i, m.	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmūs, i, m.	<i>branch</i> .
Rēgīnā, ae, f.	<i>queen</i> .
Tulliā, ae, f.	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.
Victōria, ae, f.	<i>Victoria</i> , Queen of England.

II. Translate into English.

1. Ramus, hastā. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae.
4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum.
7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum.
10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis.
12. Templum, templā. 13. Templi, templōrum.
14. Pisistratūs tyrannus.¹ 15. Pisistrati tyranni. 16. Pisistrato tyranno.
17. Tulliā filiā. 18. Tulliae filiae. 19. Tulliam filiam.

II. Translate into Latin.

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.

¹ *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistratus*, according to Rule II. 363.

3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns. 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books. 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave.¹ 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave. 14. Victoria the queen. 15. For Victoria the queen. 16. Of Victoria the queen.

THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:²

o, or, os, er, es increasing in the genitive.

II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive; s preceded by a consonant.

III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

a, e, i, y, e, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the Nominative Singular. These all end in *e, s, or x.*

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the Nominative Singular.

In Class II., the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consulis*; stem, *consul*, a consnl: *leo*, *leōnis*; stem, *leon* (Nom. drops *n*), lion: *carmen*, *carmīnis*; stem, *carmīn* (Nom. changes *in* to *en*), song.

¹ See Rule II. 363.

² That is, nouns with these endings are masculine.

50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*,¹ and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Nubes, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>	Avis, <i>f.</i> <i>bird.</i>	Urbs, <i>f.</i> <i>city.</i>	Rex, <i>m.</i> <i>king.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> nūbēs	āvīs	urbīs	rex ²
<i>G.</i> nūbīs	avīs	urbīs	rēgīs
<i>D.</i> nubī	avī	urbī	regī
<i>A.</i> nubēm	avēm	urbēm	regēm
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avīs	urbēs	rex
<i>A.</i> nubē	avē	urbē	regē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>G.</i> nubīm	aviūm	urbīm	regūm
<i>D.</i> nubībūs	avibūs	urbibūs	regibūs
<i>A.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>A.</i> nubībūs.	avibūs.	urbibūs.	regibūs.

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*, and **x**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Miles, <i>m.</i> <i>soldier.</i>	Lapis, <i>m.</i> <i>stone.</i>	Ars, <i>f.</i> <i>art.</i>	Judex, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>judge.</i>
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------	---

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> milēs	lāpīs	ars	jūdex ²
<i>G.</i> milītīs	lapidīs	artīs	judicīs
<i>D.</i> milītī	lapidī	artī	judicī
<i>A.</i> milītēm	lapidēm	artēm	judicēm
<i>V.</i> milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
<i>A.</i> milītē	lapidē	artē	judicē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> milītēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
<i>G.</i> milītūm	lapidūm	artīum	judicūm

¹ *Impure*; i.e., preceded by a consonant.

² X in rex = gs; g belonging to the stem, and s being the Nom. ending: but in judex, x = cs; c belonging to the stem, and s being the Nom. ending.

<i>D.</i> militib <small>ās</small>	lapidib <small>ūs</small>	artib <small>ūs</small>	judicib <small>ūs</small>
<i>A.</i> militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
<i>V.</i> militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
<i>A.</i> militib <small>ūs.</small>	lapidib <small>ūs.</small>	artib <small>ūs.</small>	judicib <small>ūs.</small>

III. Nouns in **as, os, us, and e:**—*those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

Civitas, <i>f.</i>	Nepos, <i>m.</i>	Virtus, <i>f.</i>	Mare, <i>n.</i>
state.	grandson.	virtue.	sea.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> civitās	nepōs	virtūs	mārč
<i>G.</i> civitātis	nepōtīs	virtūtīs	marīs
<i>D.</i> civitātī	nepōtī	virtūtī	marī
<i>A.</i> civitātēm	nepōtēm	virtūtēm	marē
<i>V.</i> civitās	nepōs	virtūs	marč
<i>A.</i> civitātē	nepōtē	virtūtē	marī ²

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> civitātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marīā
<i>G.</i> civitātūm ¹	nepōtūm	virtūtūm	marīūm
<i>D.</i> civitatib <small>ūs</small>	nepotib <small>ūs</small>	virtutib <small>ūs</small>	marib <small>ūs</small>
<i>A.</i> civitātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marīā
<i>V.</i> civitātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marīā
<i>A.</i> civitatib <small>ūs.</small>	nepotib <small>ūs.</small>	virtutib <small>ūs.</small>	marib <small>ūs.</small>

51. CLASS II.—WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r:**—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Sol, <i>m.</i>	Consul, <i>m.</i>	Passer, <i>m.</i>	Vultur, <i>m.</i>
sun.	consul.	sparrow.	vulture.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> sōl	consūl	passēr	vultūr
<i>G.</i> sōlīs	consūlīs	passērīs	vultūrīs
<i>D.</i> sōlī	consūlī	passērī	vultūrī
<i>A.</i> sōlēm	consūlēm	passērēm	vultūrēm
<i>V.</i> sōl	consūl	passēr	vultūr
<i>A.</i> sōlē	consūlē	passērē	vultūrē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
<i>G.</i>	consūlūm	passērūm	vultūrūm
<i>D.</i> sōlīb <small>ūs</small>	consūlīb <small>ūs</small>	passērīb <small>ūs</small>	vultūrīb <small>ūs</small>

¹ Sometimes civitatiūm.² Sometimes mare in poetry.

A. sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	vulturēs
V. sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	vulturēs
A. sōlībūs.	consultibūs.	passerībūs.	vulturībūs.

III. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Leo, <i>m.</i> <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i> <i>maiden.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i> <i>father.</i>	Pastor, <i>m.</i> <i>shepherd.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. leo	virgo	pātēr	pastōr
G. leōnīs	virgīnīs	pātrīs	pastōrīs
D. leōnī	virgīnī	pātrī	pastōrī
A. leōnēm	virgīnēm	pātrēm	pastōrēm
V. leo	virgo	pātēr	pastōr
A. leōnē	virgīnē	pātrē	pastōrē

PLURAL.

N. leōnēs	virgīnēs	pātrēs	pastōrēs
G. leōnīm	virgīnīm	pātrūm	pastōrūm
D. leonībūs	virgīnībūs	pātrībūs	pastōrībūs
A. leōnēs	virgīnēs	pātrēs	pastōrēs
V. leōnēs	virgīnēs	pātrēs	pastōrēs
A. leonībūs.	virgīnībūs.	pātrībūs.	pastōrībūs.

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Carmen, <i>n.</i> <i>song.</i>	Opus, <i>n.</i> <i>work.</i>	Corpus, <i>n.</i> <i>body.</i>	Capūt, <i>n.</i> <i>head.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. carmēn	ōpūs	corpūs	cāpūt
G. carmīnīs	opērīs	corpōrīs	cāpītīs
D. carmīnī	opērī	corpōrī	cāpītī
A. carmēn	opūs	corpūs	cāpūt
V. carmēn	opūs	corpūs	cāpūt
A. carmīnē	opērē	corpōrē	cāpītē

PLURAL.

N. carmīnā	opērā	corpōrā	cāpītā
G. carmīnūm	opērūm	corpōrūm	cāpītūm
D. carminībūs	operībūs	corporībūs	cāpītībūs
A. carmīnā	opērā	corpōrā	cāpītā
V. carmīnā	opērā	corpōrā	cāpītā
A. carminībūs.	operībūs.	corporībūs.	cāpītībūs.

52. Case-Endings.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> s ¹ (es, is) —— ²	ě —— ²
<i>Gen.</i> īs	īs
<i>Dat.</i> ī	ī
<i>Acc.</i> ĕm (im) ³	like Nom.
<i>Voc.</i> like Nom.	" "
<i>Abl.</i> ě, ī	ě, ī

PLURAL.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> ēs	ă, iaă
<i>Gen.</i> īm, iūm	ūm, iūm
<i>Dat.</i> ībūs	ībūs
<i>Acc.</i> ēs	ă, iaă
<i>Voc.</i> ēs	ă, iaă
<i>Abl.</i> ībūs.	ībūs.

53. Declension.—To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the Nominative Singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

¹ In nouns in *x* (=es or gs), *s* is the case-ending, and the *e* or *g* belongs to the stem.

² The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

³ The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE:

Class I.

Rūpes,	<i>Gen.</i> rupis, f.	rock;	hospeſ,	<i>Gen.</i> hospit̄is, m.	gueſt.
vestis,	vestis, f.	garment;	eupl̄is,	eupl̄idis, f.	spear.
trabs,	trābis, f.	beam;	mons,	montis, in.	mountain.
lex,	lēgis, f.	law;	ăpex,	ap̄cis, m.	summit.
libertas,	libertātis, f.	liberty;	sālus,	salūtis, f.	safety.
ſedile,	ſedilis, n.	seat;			

Class II.

Exſul,	<i>Gen.</i> exſūlis, m. and f.	exile;	dōlor,	<i>Gen.</i> dolōris, m.	pain.
actio,	actiōnis, f.	action;	imāgo,	imaginis, f.	image.
anſer,	ansēris, m.	goose;	frāter,	fratris, m.	brother.
nōmen,	nomiñis, n.	name;	tempus,	tempōris, n.	time.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:¹

Cātōnis ūratiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Caſtra hostiū, *the camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hāmīlcāris, *the death of Hamilcar.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōniſ ūratiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

Catōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (31, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class II., as it has no Nominative Ending (49, II. and 51, II.): STEM, *Catōn* (41); Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped, 49, II.). Singn-

¹ The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of another noun: *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king; *Catōnis oratiōnes*, Cato's orations, or the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of Cluilius by showing *what* Cluilius is meant,—*Cluilius the king.* In a similar manner, the Genitive *Catōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *oratiōnes* by showing *what* orations are meant,—*the orations of Cato.* Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or

lar:¹ *Cato, Catōnis, Catōni, Catōnem, Cato, Catōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 35, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *oratiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: “Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive.”

THIRD DECLENSION—CONTINUED.—CLASS I.²

EXERCISE VIII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Civis, civis, m. and f.</i>	<i>citizen.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>
<i>Mors, mortis, f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
<i>Pax, pācis, f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Nubis, nubium.
2. Nubem, nubes.
3. Avis, aves.
4. Avi, avibus.
5. Urbs, urbes.
6. Urbi, urbibus.
7. Rex, reges.
8. Regis, regum.
9. Nubēs, milēs.
10. Nubis, milītis.
11. Nubem, milītem.
12. Rex, judex.
13. Regis, judīcis.
14. Reges, judīces.
15. Civitas, cīvitātes.
16. Virtus, virtūtes.
17. Mors regis.³
18. Morte regis.
19. Mortes regum.
20. Virtus judīcis.
21. Pacis gloriā.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens.
2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds.
3. A king, a law.
4. Kings, laws.

thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *oratiōnes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

¹ As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

² This exercise furnishes practice in the declension of nouns belonging to Class I. of the Third Declension. See 50.

³ *Regis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *mors*, according to Rule XVI. 395.

5. Of the king, of the law.
6. Of the kings, of the laws.
7. To the king, to the law.
8. To the kings, to the laws.
9. The law of the state.¹
10. The laws of the state.

THIRD DECLENSION—CONTINUED.—CLASS II.
PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.²

Ad *amicum* scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In *cūriam*, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In *Italiā*,³ *in Italy.* Nep. Pro *castris*, *before the camp.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad *amicūm*, *To a friend.*

Amīcum is a noun (31) of the Second Declension (45), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *amīc* (41). Singular: *amīcus*, *amīci*, *amīco*, *amīcum*, *amīce*, *amīco*. Plural: *amīci*, *amīcōrum*, *amīcis*, *amīcos*, *amīci*, *amīcis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 45, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: “The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.” The Accusative is used with *ad*.

¹ The Latin word for *of the state* will be in the Genitive, according to Rule XVI. 395.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable at this early stage of the course to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

³ Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*; though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the *Accusative* when it means *into*, and with the *Ablative* when it means *in*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>to, towards.</i>
Cicērō, Cicērōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cicero, the Roman orator.</i>
Consūl, consūlis, <i>m.</i>	<i>consul.¹</i>
Contrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against, contrary to.</i>
Exsūl, exsūlis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>exile.</i>
Frāter, frātrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>name.</i>
Orātiō, ūrātiōnīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>oration, speech.</i>
Orātōr, ūrātōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>orator.</i>
Victōr, victōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>victor, conqueror.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 2. Virgo, virgīnis, virgīnes. 3. Solis, solem, soles. 4. Consūlis, consūlem, consūles. 5. Solibūs, consulibūs. 6. Passēris, vultūris. 7. Passērum, vultūrum. 8. Patri, pastōri. 9. Patres, pastōres. 10. Carmen, carmīna. 11. Caput, capitā. 12. Opēris, corpōris. 13. Cicerōnis² oratio. 14. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 15. Oratiōne consūlis. 16. Ad gloriam.³ 17. Contra regem.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs,

¹ The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

² See Rule XVI. 395, and Model.

³ The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

- names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother.
 12. To¹ the father, to the brother. 13. Contrary to the law.² 14. Contrary to the laws of the state.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in
us, — *masculine*; **ū**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, fruit.	Cornu, horn.	Case-Endings.
------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
<i>G.</i> fructūs	cornūs	ūs	ūs
<i>D.</i> fructūī	cornūī	ūī	ū
<i>A.</i> fructūm	cornū	ūm	ū
<i>V.</i> fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
<i>A.</i> fructū	cornū	ū	ū

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> fructūs	cornūā	ūs	ūā
<i>G.</i> fructūm	cornūām	ūām	ūām
<i>D.</i> fructūbūs	cornūbūs	ūbūs (ūbūs)	ūbūs (ūbūs)
<i>A.</i> fructūs	cornūā	ūs	ūā
<i>V.</i> fructūs	cornūā	ūs	ūā
<i>A.</i> fructūbūs.	cornūbūs.	ūbūs (ūbūs).	ūbūs (ūbūs).

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus* song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *gēnu*, knee.

¹ *To* should still be regarded as a sign of the Dative, though it may sometimes be rendered by the preposition *ad*.

² See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. Vocabulary.

Adventūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>before.</i>
Caesār, Caesāris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Caesar, a Roman surname.</i>
Cantūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>singing, song.</i>
Conspectūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>sight, presence.</i>
Exercitūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
Hostis, hostis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Impētūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>attack.</i>
In, <i>prep.</i>	<i>into with acc., in with abl.</i>
Lusciniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>nightingale.</i>
Occūsūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>the setting, as of the sun.</i>
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>after.</i>
Ver, vēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>spring.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Fructus, cantus.
2. Fructibus, cantibus.
3. Cantus lusciniae.¹
4. Cantu lusciniae.
5. Cantibus lusciniārum.
6. Adventus veris.
7. Post adventum² veris.¹
8. Solis occāsus.
9. Post solis occāsum.
10. Caesāris adventū.
11. Ante adventum Caesāris.
12. Impētus hostium.
13. Impētu hostium.
14. In conspectu exercitus.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The army, the armies.
2. For the army, for the armies.
3. Of the army, of the armies.
4. The arrival of the army.
5. Before the arrival of the army.
6. After³

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 22.

² Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 24.

³ See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 24. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the nightingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.

• FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**, — *feminine*, and are declined as follows:

<i>Dies, day.</i> ¹	<i>Res, thing.</i>	Case-Endings.
--------------------------------	--------------------	----------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diēī	rēī	ēī
<i>D.</i> diēī	rēī	ēī
<i>A.</i> diēm	rēm	ēm
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diē	rē	ē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>G.</i> diērūm	rērūm	ērūm
<i>D.</i> diēbūs	rēbūs	ēbūs
<i>A.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>V.</i> diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>A.</i> diēbūs.	rēbūs.	ēbūs.

1. Case-Endings.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

E in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. Examples for Practice.²—*Acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

¹ *Dies*, day, is an exception in Gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

² Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want, in the Plural, the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. These cases must, therefore, be omitted in declining these examples.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.¹

SINGULAR.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Masc., Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Masc.	Dec. IV.	Neut.	D. V.
N. <i>ā</i>	ūs— ²	ūm	s (es, is) ³	—ē—	ūs	ū	ēs	
G. ae	ī	ī	īs	īs	ūs	ūs	ēī	
D. ae	ō	ō	ī	ī	ūj	ū	ēī	
A. ām	ūm	ūm	ēm (īm)	like nom.	ūm	ū	ēm	
V. ā	ē—	ūm	like nom.	like nom.	ūs	ū	ēs	
A. ā	ō	ō	ē (ī)	ē (ī)	ū	ū	ē	

PLURAL.

N. ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	ūā	ēs	
G. ārūm	ōrūm	ōrūm	ūm (ūm)	ūm (ūm)	ūm	ūm	ērūm	
D. īs	īs	īs	ibūs	ibūs	ibūs	ibūs (ibūs)	ibūs (ibūs)	ēbūs
A. ūs	ōs	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	ūā	ēs	
V. ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	nā	ēs	
A. īs.	īs	īs.	ibūs	ibūs.	ibūs (ibūs)	ibūs (ibūs)	ibūs.	ēbūs.

EXERCISE XI.

I. Vocabulary.

Aciēs, āciēī, <i>f.</i>	battle-array, army.
Amicūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	friend.
Cibūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	food.
Dē, prep. with abl.	concerning.
Diēs, diēī, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	day.
Faciēs, fāciēī, <i>f.</i>	face, appearance.
Nūmērūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	number, quantity.
Rēs, rēī, <i>f.</i>	thing, affair.
Spēciēs, spēciēī, <i>f.</i>	appearance.
Spēs, spēī, <i>f.</i>	hope.
Victōriā, ae, <i>f.</i>	victory.

¹ This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Dec. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45, 1).

³ The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Diēi, diērum, diēbus.
2. Aciēi, aciem, acie.
3. Diem, speciem.
4. Die, specie.
5. Res, spes.
6. Rei, spei.
7. Victoriae spes.
8. Victoriae spe.
9. Diēi horae.
10. Numērus diērum.
11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies.
12. Gloriae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi.
13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days.
 2. Of the day, of the days.
 3. For the day, for the days.
 4. The thing, the things.
 5. With the thing, with the things.
 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things.
 7. Of the thing, of the things.
 8. Concerning the battle-array.
 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope.
 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.
-

C H A P T E R II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Decl. II.

us —¹,

Fem., Decl. I.

a,

Neut., Decl. II.

um.

They are declined as follows:

Bōnus, good.

SINGULAR.

*Masc.**Nom.* **bōnūs***Gen.* **bonī***Dat.* **bonō***Acc.* **bonūm***Voc.* **bonē***Abl.* **bonō***Fem.***bōnā****bonae****bonae****bonām****bonā****bonā***Neut.***bōnūm****bonī****bonō****bōnūm****bonūm****bonō;**

PLURAL.

Nom. **bonī***Gen.* **bonōrūm***Dat.* **bonīs***Acc.* **bonōs***Voc.* **bonī***Abl.* **bonīs****bonae****bonārūm****bonīs****bonās****bonae****bonīs****bonā****bonōrūm****bonīs****bonā****bonā****bonīs.***Liber, free.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. **libēr***Gen.* **libērī***Dat.* **libērō***Acc.* **libērūm***Voc.* **libēr***Abl.* **libērō****libērāt****libērāe****libērāe****libērām****libērāt****libērāt****libērūm****libērī****libērō****libērūm****libērō;**

PLURAL.

Nom. **libērī***Gen.* **liberōrūm***Dat.* **libērīs***Acc.* **libērōs***Voc.* **libērī***Abl.* **libērīs****libērāe****liberārūm****libērīs****libērās****libērāe****libērīs****libērā****liberōrūm****libērīs****libērā****libērā****libērīs.**¹ The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45, 1.

Aeger, sick.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> aegēr	aegrā	aegrīm
<i>Gen.</i> aegrī	aegrāe	aegrī
<i>Dat.</i> aegrō	aegrāe	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i> aegrīm	aegrām	aegrīm
<i>Voc.</i> aeger	aegrā	aegrīm
<i>Abl.</i> aegrō	aegrā	aegrō;

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> aegrī	aegrāe	aegrā
<i>Gen.</i> aegrōrīm	aegrārīm	aegrōrīm
<i>Dat.</i> aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
<i>Acc.</i> aegrōs	aegrās	aegrā
<i>Voc.</i> aegrī	aegrāe	aegrā
<i>Abl.</i> aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs.

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Mase. like *servus* of Dee. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Dee. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Dee. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45, 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45, 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.*¹ Cic. Vērae āmīctiae, *true friendships.* Cic. Māgister optimus, *the best teacher.* Cic.

¹ Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like **BONUS**: *caecus, caeca, caecum.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Vērae āmīcītīae, *True friendships.*

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *ver* (41, 148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: “An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE.”

EXERCISE XII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annūlūs, ī, m.	ring.
Aureūs, ā, ūm, ¹	golden.
Beātūs, ā, ūm,	happy, blessed.
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.
Egrēgiūs, ā, ūn,	distinguished.
Fidūs, ā, ūm,	faithful.
Grātūs, ā, ūm,	acceptable, pleasing.
Magnūs, ā, ūm,	great.
Multūs, ā, ūm,	much, many.
Puellā, ae, f.	girl.
Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,	beautiful.
Rēgīnā, ae, f.	queen.
Rēgnūm, ī, n.	kingdom.
Vērūs, ā, ūm,	true.
Vitā, ae, f.	life.

¹ The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcus fidus.¹
2. Amīci fidi.
3. Amīeo fido.
4. Amīcum fidum.
5. Amīce fide.
6. Amīorum fidōrum.
7. Amīcis fidis.
8. Amīeos fidos.
9. Corōnā aureā.
10. Corōnae aureae.
11. Corōnam auream.
12. Corōnā aureā.
13. Coronārum aureārum.
14. Corōnis aureis.
15. Corōnas aureas.
16. Donum gratum.
17. Doni grati.
18. Dono grato.
19. Dona grata.
20. Donōrum gratōrum.
21. Donis gratis.
22. Ager pulcher.
23. Puellā pulchrā.
24. Donum pulchrum.
25. Agri pulchri.
26. Puellae pulchrae.
27. Dona pulchra.
28. Beātā vitā.
29. Aureus annūlus.
30. Aurei annūli.
31. Magnā gloriā.
32. Egregiā victoriā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true² friend.
2. The true² friends.
3. For a true friend.
4. For true friends.
5. Of the true friend.
6. Of true friends.
7. True glory.
8. With true glory.
9. Of true glory.
10. An acceptable word.
11. Acceptable words.
12. With acceptable words.
13. Of acceptable words.
14. A beautiful book.
15. The beautiful books.
16. With a beautiful book.
17. Of beautiful books.
18. The beautiful queen.
19. The crown of the beautiful queen.
20. The beautiful crown of the queen.
21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom.
22. The brothers of the good king.

¹ In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

² Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms,—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms,—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form,—the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
er,	is,	e.

They are declined as follows:

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> acér	acris	acerē
<i>G.</i> acris	acris	acris
<i>D.</i> acrit	acri	acri
<i>A.</i> acrim	acrem	acerē
<i>V.</i> acér	acris	acerē
<i>A.</i> acrit	acri	acri;

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>G.</i> acrīm	acrīm	acriā
<i>D.</i> acrībūs	acrībūs	acriā
<i>A.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>V.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>A.</i> acrībūs	acrībūs	acriā

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.
1. is	e, for positives.
2. ior (or)	ius (us), for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, sad.

Tristior, more sad.¹

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> trist̄s	trist̄č	<i>N.</i> tristiōr	tristiūs
<i>G.</i> trist̄s	trist̄s	<i>G.</i> tristiōr̄s	tristiōr̄s
<i>D.</i> trist̄i	trist̄i	<i>D.</i> tristiōr̄i	tristiōr̄i
<i>A.</i> trist̄em	trist̄č	<i>A.</i> tristiōr̄em	tristiūs
<i>V.</i> trist̄s	trist̄č	<i>V.</i> tristiōr	tristiūs
<i>A.</i> trist̄i	trist̄i;	<i>A.</i> tristiōr̄e (i)	tristiōr̄e (i);

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> tristēs	tristiā	<i>N.</i> tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
<i>G.</i> tristiūm	tristiūm	<i>G.</i> tristiōrūm	tristiōrūm
<i>D.</i> tristiōbūs	tristiōbūs	<i>D.</i> tristiōrībūs	tristiōrībūs
<i>A.</i> tristēs	tristiā	<i>A.</i> tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
<i>V.</i> tristēs	tristiā	<i>V.</i> tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
<i>A.</i> tristiōbūs	tristiōbūs.	<i>A.</i> tristiōrībūs	tristiōrībūs.

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.—All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *t* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Félix, happy.

Prudens, prudent.

SINGULAR.

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>N. prudens</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>G. felicis</i>	<i>felicis</i>	<i>G. prudentis</i>	<i>prudentis</i>
<i>D. felicis</i>	<i>felicis</i>	<i>D. prudentis</i>	<i>prudentis</i>
<i>A. felicem</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>A. prudentem</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>V. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>V. prudens</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>A. felicem (I)</i>	<i>felicem (I);</i>	<i>A. prudentem (I)</i>	<i>prudentem (I);</i>

¹ Comparative. See 160.

PLURAL.

<i>N. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>	<i>N. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>G. feliciūm</i>	<i>feliciūm</i>	<i>G. prudentiūm</i>	<i>prudentiūm</i>
<i>D. felicibūs</i>	<i>felicibūs</i>	<i>D. prudentibūs</i>	<i>prudentibūs</i>
<i>A. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>	<i>A. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>V. felicēs</i>	<i>feliciā</i>	<i>V. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>A. felicibūs</i>	<i>felicibūs.</i>	<i>A. prudentibūs</i>	<i>prudentibūs.</i>

EXERCISE XIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Acēr, īcrīs, īcrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Anīmāl, īnīmālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>animal.</i>
Brēvīs, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēlis, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōrīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūcīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>leader.</i>
Fertilis, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortīs, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvālis, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnīs, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiens, sāpientīs,	<i>wise.</i>
Singūlārīs, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilis, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer.
2. Dolōres aeres.
3. Lex acris.
4. Legibūs acrībus.
5. Hostis crudēlis.
6. Hostem crudēlem.
7. Miles fortīs.
8. Virtus militīs¹ fortīs.
9. Virtūte militūtum¹ fortīum.
10. Ager fertilis.
11. In agro fertili.
12. Agros fertiles.
13. In agris fertilibūs.
14. Post vitām brevem.
15. Pugnae navāles.
16. Post pugnas navāles.
17. Singulāris virtus.
18. Singulāri virtūte.
19. Omne anīmāl.
20. Omnia animalia.

¹ Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen.
2. Of useful citizens.
3. For a useful citizen.
4. For useful citizens.
5. Of a useful citizen.
6. The wise judge.
7. Wise judges.
8. For the wise judge.
9. For wise judges.
10. Brave soldiers.
11. For brave soldiers.
12. A brave soldier.
13. Of the brave soldier.
14. The brave leader.
15. Brave leaders.
16. The word of the brave leader.
17. By the words of the brave leader.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus, altior, altissimus*,¹ high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.

M. F. N.

iōr, *iōr*, *iūs.*

Superlative.

M. F. N.

issimūs, *issimā*, *issimūm.*

¹ Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus, a, um*; *alti, ae, i*, etc.; *altissimus, a, um*; *altissimi, ae, i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 152: *altior, altius; altioris*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*
lēvis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus.
Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clāriōr, *A more renowned orator.*

Clarior is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*, which is of the First and Second Declensions (148). Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clār-*; Comparative, *clariōr*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (152). Singular: N. *clarior*, *clarius*; G. *clariōris*, *clariōris*, etc.¹ It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.²

EXERCISE XIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Altūs, ā, um,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, prep. with acc.	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montis, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Orātōr clarus. 2. Orātōr clarior.³ 3. Orātōr clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.³ 6. Ora-

¹ Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

² Give the Rule.

³ Declined like *tristior*, 152. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

tōres clarissimi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beator vita. 9. Beatiſſima vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratiſſimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratiſſima. 16. Milites fortiſſimi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utiliſſi-
mis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field.
2. A more fertile field.
3. The most fertile field.
4. Fertile fields.
5. More fertile fields.
6. A useful life.
7. A more useful life.
8. The most useful life.
9. Useful lives.
10. More useful lives.
11. The most useful lives.
12. A pleasing song.
13. A more pleasing song.
14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: ¹*ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: ¹*prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: ¹*singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. <i>ūnūs</i> , ună, unūm,	<i>prīmūs</i> , <i>fīrst</i> ,	<i>singūli</i> , one by one.
2. <i>duō</i> , duae, duō,	<i>sēcundūs</i> , <i>seconđ</i> ,	<i>bīni</i> , two by two.
3. <i>trēs</i> , triă,	<i>tertiūs</i> , <i>thīrd</i> ,	<i>ternī</i> (<i>trīnī</i>).
4. <i>quattuōr</i> ,	<i>quartūs</i> , <i>fourth</i> ,	<i>quāternī</i> .
5. <i>quinquē</i> ,	<i>quintūs</i> , <i>fīfth</i> ,	<i>quīnī</i> .
6. <i>sex</i> ,	<i>sextūs</i> ,	<i>sēnī</i> .

¹ Cardinals denote simply the number of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. Ordinals denote the place of an object in a series: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*,

7. septēm,	septēmūs,	septēnī.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōnī.
9. nōvēm,	nōnūs,	nōvēnī.
10. dēcēm,	dēcēmūs,	dēnī.
11. undēcēm,	undēcēmūs,	undēnī.
12. duōdēcēm,	duōdēcēmūs,	duōdēnī.
13. trēdēcēm, or dēcēm ēt trēs,	tertiūs dēcēmūs,	ternī dēnī.
20. vīgintī,	vīcēsīmūs,	vīcēnī.
21. { vīgintī ūnūs, { ūnūs ēt vīgintī,	vīcēsīmūs prīmūs, ūnūs ēt vīcēsīmūs,	vīcēnī singūlī. singūlī ēt vīcēnī.
30. trigintā,	trīcēsīmūs,	trīcēnī.
40. quadragintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēnī.
50. quinquagintā,	quinquāgēsīmūs,	quinquagēnī.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēnī.
200. dūcentī, ae, ā,	dūcentēsīmūs,	dūcēnī.
1000. mille,	millēsīmūs,	singūlā millia.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. *Cardinals.*

175. On the declension of cardinals, observe,

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum*, are indeclinable.

3. That the hundreds are declined.¹

4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.²

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

1. *Unus, one.*

Singular.		Plural.
N. ūnūs,	ūnā,	ūnūm, ūnā,
G. unīns,	unīns,	unīns, unōrūm, unārūm, unōrūm,
D. unī,	unī,	unī, unīs, unīs,
A. unūm,	unām,	unūm, unōs, unās, unā,
V. unč,	unā,	unūm,
A. unō,	unā,	unō; unīs, unīs, unīs.

second. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time: *singūlī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two.

¹ These are declined like the plural of *bonus* (148); *ducentī, ae, a*, two hundred.

² Though only in the plural, and only when used substantively. It is then declined like the plural of *mare* (50); *millia, millium, millibus*.

2. Duo, *two*.*N.**G.**D.**A.**A.*

duae,

duārūm,

duābūs,

duās,

duābūs,

duō,

duōrūm,

duōbūs,

duō,

duōbūs,

trēs, *m.* and *f.*

trīum,

trībūs,

trēs,

trībūs,

triā, *n.*

triūm,

trībūs,

triā,

trībūs.

EXERCISE XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Annūs, i, m.</i>	<i>year.</i>
<i>Classis, classis, f.</i>	<i>fleet.</i>
<i>Fortitudo, fortitudinis, f.</i>	<i>fortitude, bravery.</i>
<i>Imprium, ii, n.</i>	<i>reign, power.</i>
<i>Navis, navis, f.</i>	<i>ship.</i>
<i>Proelium, ii, n.</i>	<i>battle.</i>
<i>Vir, viri, m.</i>	<i>man, hero.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Unus*¹ liber. 2. *Duo*¹ libri. 3. *Liber primus*.¹ 4. *Liber secundus.* 5. *Tres libri.* 6. *Tertius liber.* 7. *Tria bella.* 8. *Post tria bella.* 9. *Post tertium bellum.* 10. *Ante quartum bellum.* 11. *Quattuor*² *anni.* 12. *Post bellum quinque annorum.* 13. *Decem*² *dies.* 14. *Decimus dies.*³ 15. *Decem horae.* 16. *Decima hora.* 17. *Decem proelia.* 18. *Decimum proelium.* 19. *Horā diēi decimā.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

¹ Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

² The indeclinable numeral adjectives (175, 2) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender, and in any case.

³ *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally *masculine*.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ēgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ēgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> <i>ēgō</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>G.</i> <i>meī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>suī</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibī</i>	<i>sibī</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>A.</i> <i>mē;</i>	<i>tē;</i>	<i>sē;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>G.</i> <i>nostrīm</i> }	<i>vestrūm</i> }	<i>suī</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>nōbīs</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibī</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>A.</i> <i>nōbīs.</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē.</i>

1. **Substantive Pronouns.**—Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.**—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

<i>meus, my,</i>	<i>noster, our.</i>
<i>tūus, thy, your,</i>	<i>vester, your.</i>
<i>suus, his, her, its,</i>	<i>suis, their.</i>

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions;¹ *meus, mea, meum*; *noster, nostra, nostrum*: but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem.

They are declined as follows:

Hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>	<i>hārūm</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> <i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc;</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs.</i>

Illē, he or that.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>illē</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illūd</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illā</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>illiūs</i>	<i>illiūs</i>	<i>illiūs</i>	<i>illōrūm</i>	<i>illārūm</i>	<i>illōrūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>illūm</i>	<i>illām</i>	<i>illūd</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illā</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> <i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō;</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis.</i>

¹ See *bonus* and *aeger*, 148.

Istě, *that*.

Istě, *that*, is declined like *illē*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

Ipsč, *self, he*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> ipsě	ipsă	ipsūm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
<i>G.</i> ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrūm	ipsārūm	ipsōrūm
<i>D.</i> ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>A.</i> ipsūm	ipsām	ipsūm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō ;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

Is, *he, that*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> īs	eă	īd	īi	eae	eă
<i>G.</i> ejūs	ejūs	ejūs	eōrūm	eārūm	eōrūm
<i>D.</i> eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>A.</i> eūm	eām	īd	eōs	eās	eă
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eō	eă	eō ;	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs).

Idem, *the same*.

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idem*, and *isdem* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*; thus:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> īdēm	eādēm	īdēm	īidēm	eādēm	eādēm
<i>G.</i> ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
<i>D.</i> eīdēm	eīdēm	eīdēm	iīsdēm	iīsdēm	iīsdēm
<i>A.</i> eūndēm	eāndēm	īdēm	eōsdēm	eāsdēm	eādēm
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eōdēm	eādēm	eōdēm ;	iīsdēm	iīsdēm	iīsdēm.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quorūm</i>	<i>quarūm</i>	<i>quorūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō;</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs.</i>

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

Quis (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>quis</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quorūm</i>	<i>quarūm</i>	<i>quorūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō;</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs.</i>

Qui (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the relative *qui*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.¹

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites*:

aliquis, *aliqua*, *aliquid* or *aliquid*, *some, some one*.
quispiam, *quacpiam*, *quidpiam* or *quodpiam*, *some, some one*.
quidam, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*, *certain, certain one*.
quisquam, *quidquam*,

any one.

¹ But after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and the Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua*; *si quae*, *si qua*. In like manner, *aliquis* has *aliqua* in the Feminine Singular and in the Neuter Plural.

II. *The General Indefinites:*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, *every, every one.*
 quīvis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, *any one you please.*
 quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet, *any one you please.*

EXERCISE XVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Consiliūm, ī, n.	<i>design, plan.</i>
Epistōlā, ae, f.	<i>letter.</i>
Ex, prep. with abl.	<i>from.</i>
Insūlā, ae, f.	<i>island.</i>
Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.	<i>parent.</i>
Pars, partis, f.	<i>part, portion.</i>
Pātriā, ae, f.	<i>country, native country.</i>
Praeclārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished.</i>
Prātūm, ī, n.	<i>meadow.</i>
Prō, prep. with abl.	<i>for, in behalf of.</i>
Quīvis, quaevis, quodvis,	<i>whoever, whatever.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,¹ ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nós. 5. Pro vobis.¹ 6. Meā² vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.² 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris² consiliis. 12. Vesti patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic² puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae² urbs?

¹ See 184, 1. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules. See Rule XXXII. 432. Other pronouns are sometimes used as nouns, and parsed in the same way.

² The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 32. Hence *meā* is in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with *vitū*; *nostris*, in the Dative or Ablative Plural Neuter, to agree with *consiliis*; *hic*, in the Nominative Singular Masculine, to agree with *puer*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you.
 2. You, me, himself.
 3. For you, for me, for himself.
 4. Of himself, of you.
 5. Against you, against me.
 6. My book, your book, his book.
 7. My books, your books, his books.
 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents.
 9. This letter, that letter.
 10. These letters, those letters.
 11. This city, that city.
 12. These cities, those cities.
 13. After that victory.
 14. The same words.
 15. With the same words.
-

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lēgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,— which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*¹ *verbērat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,— which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:²

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,— which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pāter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

² Voice shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amatur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. Moods.

196. Moods¹ are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite or Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The **INDICATIVE MOOD**,—which either asserts something as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lēgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. The **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**,—which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lēgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The **IMPERATIVE MOOD**,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lēge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. The **INFINITIVE**,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *lēgere*, to read.

2. The **GERUND**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in *ING*: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The **SUPINE**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The **PARTICIPLE**,—which, like the English Participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

¹ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future, — *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love: and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future, — *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:¹

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.** — The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have (have loved)*, and is called the *Present Perfect*, or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*lored*), and is called the *Historical Perfect*, or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical.** — Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*: — Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*: — Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.** — The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two Numbers:² SINGULAR and PLURAL.

¹ *Tense* means *time*, and is employed to designate the *time* of an action or event.

² *Number* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to number in nouns. See 37.

V. PERSONS.

200. There are three Persons:¹ FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ěre,	īre.

202. Principal Parts.—Four forms of the verb—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine²—are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. Entire Conjugation.—In any regular verb,
1. The VERB-STEM may be found by dropping the Infinitive Ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.

2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.³

¹ Person in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to person in nouns. See 37.

² In the Active Voice, all these four forms are usually given as Principal Parts; but, in the Passive, only the first three.

³ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am.*

Sum is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sūm,	essē,	fuī,	—. ¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sūm,	<i>I am,</i>	sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
čs,	<i>thou art;</i> ²	estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
est,	<i>he is;</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

črām,	<i>I was,</i>	črāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>	erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was;</i>	erant,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

črō,	<i>I shall be,</i>	črīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erīs,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erīt,	<i>he will be;</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, waſ.

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i>	fuīmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuistīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been;</i>	fuērunt,	<i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been;</i>	fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ The Supine is wanting in this verb.² Or, *you are*: *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse: in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be.¹

SINGULAR.

sím,	<i>I may be,</i>	| símūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
síſ,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	| síſis,	<i>you may be,</i>
sít,	<i>he may be;</i>	| sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

PLURAL.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be.

essěm,	<i>I might be,</i>	| essěmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essěſ,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	| essěſis,	<i>you might be,</i>
essět,	<i>he might be;</i>	| essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have been.

fuěřim,	<i>I may have been,</i>	| fuěřimūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuěřiſ,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	| fuěřiſis,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuěřit,	<i>he may have been;</i>	| fuěrint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been.

fuissěm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	| fuissěmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissěſ,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	| fuissěſis,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissět,	<i>he might have been;</i>	| fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. čs,	<i>be thou,</i>	| estě,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,²</i>	| estōč,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be;</i>	| suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. essě,	<i>to be.</i>		
PERF. fuissě,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. fútūrūs ³ essě,	<i>to be about to be.</i>	FUT. fútūrūs ³	<i>about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

¹ The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: *sit, he may be, may he be, let him be.*

² The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: *esto, thou shalt be, or be thou; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.*

³ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*; N. *futūrus, a, um, G. futūri, ae, i*; so in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite¹ Verb agrees with its Subject² in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificavit,³ God made the world. Cie. *Ego rēges ejēci, vos týrannos intrōdūcītis,* *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

Thebāni accūsāti sunt,⁴ The Thebans were accused. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted—

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipūlos mōneō,⁵ ut stūdia āment,⁵ I instruct pupils to love⁶ their studies. Quint.

¹ See 196, I.

² With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. is *acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

³ *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *introducītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

⁴ The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

⁵ The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *I*.

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, *they*, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

⁶ To love, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (203).
2. Give the Principal Parts (202), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.¹
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs² ērāmūs, *We were.*

Erāmus is an intransitive irregular³ verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui, —*⁴. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmus, erālis, erant*. The form *erāmus* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *First* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: “A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON.”

2. *Sum without Subject.*⁵

Fuī, *I have been.*

Fui is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti,*

¹ That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

² *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

³ Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

⁴ The *Supine* is wanting.

⁵ That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit; fuīmus, fuīstis, fuērunt, or fuēre. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative mood, Perfect tense, First person, Singular number*, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied¹ in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

EXERCISE XVII.

I. Translate into English.

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.²
2. Es, est, estis.
3. Eram, erāmus.²
4. Erat, erant.
5. Eris, erītis.²
6. Erit, erūnt.
7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro.
8. Fuīmus, fuerāmus, fuerīmus.
9. Fuīsti, fuīstis.
10. Fuit, fuērunt.
11. Fuērat, fuērant.
12. Fuērit, fuērint.
13. Sim, simus.
14. Sit, sint.
15. Essem, essēmus.
16. Esset, essent.
17. Fuērim, fuisse.
18. Fuerīmus, fuissēmus.
19. Fuērit, fuērint.
20. Fuisse, fuissent.
21. Es, este.

II. Translate into Latin.

1. He³ is, they³ are.
2. He has been, they have been.
3. He will be, they will be.
4. He was, they were.
5. He will have been, they will have been.
6. He had been, they had been.
7. I³ was, you were.
8. We have been, you have been.
9. You may be, they may be.
10. He would be, they would be.
11. I might have been, we might have been.

¹ See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

² In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum, nos sumus, ii sunt.*

³ The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is = est.*

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite¹ Verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius² regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. *Pātent portae, The gates are open.* Cic. *Rex vīcit, The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vīcit, The king conquered.

Rex is a noun (31) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class I., as it has a nominative ending *s* (*x=g-s*, of which *s* is the ending, as *g* belongs to the *stem*. See 50, I. note); STEM, *reg.* Singular: *rex, regis, regi, regem, rex, rege.* Plural: *reges, regum, regibus, reges, reges, regibus.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 35, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III.: “The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative.”

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cătō, Cătōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
Crūdūs, ā, ūm,	<i>unripe.</i>
Dilīgens, Diligentīs,	<i>diligent.</i>
Discipūlūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>pupil.</i>

¹ See 196, I.

² In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ae, f.	<i>Germany.</i>
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm.	<i>pleasant, delightful.</i>
Laudābilis, č.	<i>praiseworthy, laudable.</i>
Mātūrus, ā, ūnī.	<i>ripe.</i>
Pōmūm, ī, n.	<i>fruit.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Pax¹ jucunda² est.³ 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis⁴ fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertīlis est. 13. Agri fertīles fuērant. 14. Pōnum crūdum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.⁵ 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

¹ *Pax* is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

² *Jucunda* is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 32.

³ *Est* is a verb in the *Indicative* mood, *Present* tense, *Third* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

⁴ *Utilis* agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

⁵ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun¹ denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,¹ *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est déclaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

Nuntius is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *nunti*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntiūs*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntiīs*, *nuntiōrum* *nuntiīs*, *nuntios*, *nuntiūs*, *nuntiūs*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 45; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: “A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE.”

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word,—either an interrogative pronoun,

¹ Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

EXERCISE XIX.

I. Vocabulary.

Ancūs, ī, m.	<i>Ancus</i> , Roman king.
Condītōr, condītōris, m.	<i>founder</i> .
Dēmosthēnēs, īs, m.	<i>Demosthenes</i> , Athenian orator.
Ebriētās, ēbriētātis, f.	<i>drunkenness</i> .
Graecūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Greek</i> ; <i>Grecian</i> .
Graecus, ī, m.	<i>Greek</i> , a <i>Greek</i> .
Insāniā, ae, f.	<i>insanity</i> , <i>madness</i> .
Inventōr, inventōris, m.	<i>inventor</i> .
Mātōr, mātris, f.	<i>mother</i> .
Mundūs, ī, m.	<i>world</i> , <i>universe</i> .
Nonnē, <i>interrog. part.</i>	expects answer <i>yes</i> .
Nūm, <i>interrog. part.</i>	expects answer <i>no</i> .
Philōsophiā, ae, f.	<i>philosophy</i> .
Rōmā, ae, f.	<i>Rome</i> .
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Roman</i> .
Rōmānūs, ī, m.	<i>Roman</i> , a <i>Roman</i> .
Rōmūlūs, ī, m.	<i>Romulus</i> , the founder of Rome.
Scīpiō, Scīpiōnīs, m.	<i>Scipio</i> , Roman general.

II. Translate into English.^{1*}

1. *Ancus*² fuit³ rex⁴. 2. *Nonne*⁵ *Romulus* rex fuērat?
3. *Romulus* rex fuērat. 4. *Quis condītor Romiae*⁶ fuit?
5. *Romulus* condītor Romae fuit. 6. *Ebrietas* est insania.
7. *Patria*⁷ est parens omnium nostrum.⁶ 8. *Graeci*⁷ multā rum artium⁸ inventōres erant. 9. *Demosthēnes* orātor fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.
 12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicerō clarissimus⁹
 orātor fuit. 14. Cantus lusciniae jucundissimus⁹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who¹⁰ was the king?¹¹ 2. Was not¹² Romulus king?¹¹
 3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the
 Romans? 5. Was not¹² Scipio the leader of the Romans?
 6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother
 is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys
 will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² See Rule III. page 57.

³ See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

⁴ *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in case, according to Rule I. page 59.

⁵ See 346, II. 1 above.

⁶ Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 22.

⁷ In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

⁸ *Artium* depends upon *inventores*.

⁹ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

¹⁰ See 188.

¹¹ See Rule I.

¹² *Nonne.* See 346 II. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
āmō,Pres. Inf.
āmārē,Perf. Ind.
āmāvī,Supine.
āmātūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

āmō,
āmās,
āmāt,*I love,
thou lovest,
he loves;*āmāmūs,
āmātīs,
āmant,

PLURAL.

*we love,
you love,
they love.*

IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love.*āmābām,
āmābās,
āmābāt,*I was loving,
thou wast loving,
he was loving;*āmābāmūs,
āmābātīs,
āmābānt,*we were loving,
you were loving,
they were loving.*

FUTURE.

*I shall or will love.*āmābō,
āmābīs,
āmābit,*I shall love,
thou wilt love,
he will love;*āmābīmūs,
āmābītīs,
āmābūnt,*we shall love,
you will love,
they will love.*

PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved.*āmāvī,
āmāvīstī,
āmāvīt,*I have loved,
thou hast loved,
he has loved;*āmāvīmūs,
āmāvīstīs,
āmāvērūnt, ērē,*we have loved,
you have loved,
they have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved.*āmāvērām,
āmāvērās,
āmāvērāt,*I had loved,
thou hadst loved,
he had loved;*āmāvērāmūs,
āmāvērātīs,
āmāvērānt,*we had loved,
you had loved,
they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have loved.*āmāvērō,
āmāvērīs,
āmāvērīt,*I shall have loved,
thou wilt have loved,
he will have loved;*āmāvērīmūs,
āmāvērītīs,
āmāvērīnt,*we shall have loved,
you will have loved,
they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can love.

SINGULAR.

ămĕm,	<i>I may love,</i>	ămĕmŭs,	<i>we may love,</i>
ămĕs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>	ămĕtis,	<i>you may love,</i>
ămĕt,	<i>he may love;</i>	ăment,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should love.

ămărĕm,	<i>I might love,</i>	ămărĕmŭs,	<i>we might love,</i>
ămărĕs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	ămărĕtis,	<i>you might love,</i>
ămărĕt,	<i>he might love;</i>	ămărent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have loved.

ămăvĕrim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	ămăvĕrimŭs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
ămăvĕris,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	ămăvĕritis,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
ămăvĕrit,	<i>he may have loved;</i>	ămăvĕrint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have loved.

ămăvissĕm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	ămăvissĕmŭs,	<i>we might have</i>
ămăvissĕs,	<i>thou mightst have</i>		<i>loved,</i>
	<i>loved,</i>	ămăvissĕtis,	<i>you might have loved,</i>

loved,

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămă,	<i>love thou;</i>	ămătĕ,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUT. ămătō,	<i>thou* shalt love,</i>	ămătōtĕ,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
ămătō,	<i>he shall love;</i>	ămantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămărĕ,	<i>to love.</i>
PERF. ămăvissĕ,	<i>to have loved.</i>
FUT. ămătūrūs ¹ esse,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. ămans, ²	<i>loving.</i>
FUT. ămătūrūs, ¹	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. ămaṇḍī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. ămaṇḍō,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. ămaṇḍūm,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. ămaṇḍō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. ămătūm,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. ămătū,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ Decline like bonus, 148.² Decline like prudeus, 153.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

ămōr,

Pres. Inf.

ămārī,

Perf. Ind.

ămātūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

ămōr

ămārīs, or rē

ămātūr;

PLURAL.

ămāmūr

ămāmīnī

ămantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

ămābār

ămābāris, or rē

ămābātūr;

ămābāmūr

ămābāmīnī

ămābāntūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

ămābōr

ămābērīs, or rē

ămābētūr;

ămābīmūr

ămābīmīnī

ămābūntūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was loved.*ămātūs sūm¹

ămātūs ēs

ămātūs est;

ămātī sūmūs

ămātī estīs

ămātī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*ămātūs ērām¹

ămātūs ērās

ămātūs ērāt;

ămātī ērāmūs

ămātī ērātīs

ămātī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*ămātūs ērō¹

ămātūs ērīs

ămātūs ērīt;

ămātī ērīmūs

ămātī ērītīs

ămātī ērunt.

¹ *Fui*, *fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum*, *es*, etc.; thus *amātūs fui* for *amātūs sum*. So *fuēram*, *fuēras*, etc., for *ēram*, *ēras*, etc.; also *fuēro*, *fuēris*, etc., for *ēro*, *ēris*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be loved.

SINGULAR.

ămĕr
ămĕrīs, or rĕ
ămĕtūr;

PLURAL.

ămĕmūr
ămĕmīnī
ămentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be loved.

ămărĕr
ămărĕrīs, or rĕ
ămărĕtūr;

ămărĕmūr
ămărĕmīnī
ămărentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămătūs sīm¹
ămătūs sis
ămătūs sit;

ămătī sīmūs
ămătī sītīs
ămătī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been loved.

ămătūs essĕm¹
ămătūs essēs
ămătūs essĕt;

ămătī essēmūs
ămătī essētīs
ămătī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămărĕ, *be thou loved;* | ămămīnī, *be ye loved.*FUT. ămătōr, *thou shalt be loved;* | ămantōr, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămări, *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. ămătūs essē, *to have been loved.* | PERF. ămătūs, *having been loved.*FUT. ămătūmī trī, *to be about to be loved.* | FUT. ămandūs, *to be loved.*

¹ Fuērim, fuēris, etc., are sometimes used for sīm, sis, etc. So also fuissem, fuisse, etc., for essem, esses, etc.

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vōs laudāvistīs, *You have praised.*

Laudavistis is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *laud.* Principal Parts: *laudo*, *laudāre*, *laudāvi*, *laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi*, *laudavisti*, *laudāvit*, *laudavīmus*, *laudavistis*, *laudavērunt*, or *laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the Active voice, *Indicative mood*, *Perfect tense*, *Second person*, *Plural number*, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>
Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.¹
2. Amas, amābas, amābis.
3. Amat, amant.¹
4. Amābat, amābant.
5. Amābit, amā-

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo*, *amābam*, *amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.¹ 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvit, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabēris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

(the stem, 203) in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, —o, ābam, ābo. In the forms *amat*, *amant*, there is a still closer resemblance: not only is the stem *am* common to both, but the endings have the letters *at* in common; or, in other words, the plural ending *ant* differs from the singular ending *at* only in inserting *n*: AT, ANT.

¹ Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *ābunt* differs from the singular ending *ābit*, not only in inserting *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: ABIT, ABUNT.

5. Amabitur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabīmur. 7. Amātus¹ sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti¹ sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti sinus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amantor.

II. Translate into Latin.

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised.. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

¹ The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender, number, and case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION—BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. *Laudo, laudor.*¹
2. *Laudabo, laudabor.*²
3. *Laudabam, laudabar.*²
4. *Laudem, lauder.*
5. *Laudarem, laudarer.*²
6. *Laudat, laudatur.*¹
7. *Amabit, amabatur.*
8. *Amabit, amabitur.*
9. *Amet, ametur.*
10. *Amaret, amaretur.*
11. *Laudarent, laudarentur.*
12. *Ament, amentur.*
13. *Laudant, laudantur.*
14. *Amabant, amabantur.*
15. *Laudabunt, laudabuntur.*
16. *Amavit, amatus est.*
17. *Laudav̄erat, laudatus erat.*
18. *Amav̄erit, amatus erit.*
19. *Lauda, laudare.*
20. *Amāto, amātor.*
21. *Laudanto, laudantor.*

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed.
2. I was praising, I was praised.
3. You will praise, you will be praised.
4. He

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices,—the Active and the Passive,—and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudabar* differs from the Active *laudabam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudatur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

² Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings,—in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudabor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.¹

DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

379. The Direct Object² of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*³ Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

¹ It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (42, 45). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

² The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *sālūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) the *safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the *object* produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

³ In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *sālūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deūs mundūm aedificāvit, *God made the world.*

Mundum is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *mund.* Singular: *mundus, mundi, mundo, mundum, munde, mundo.* Plural: *mundi, mundorum, mundis, mundos, mundi, mundis.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 45; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: “The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative.”

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Aedificō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to build.</i>
Arō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to plough.</i>
Cantō, ārē, avī, ātūm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Itāliā, ae, f.	<i>Italy.</i>
Libérō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to liberate.</i>
Rēnōvō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to renew.</i>
Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to hope.</i>
Tarquiniūs, ii, m.	<i>Tarquinius, Roman king.</i>
Thēmistōclēs, is, m.	<i>Themistocles, Athenian commander.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lusciniam laudo.¹
2. Lusciniam laudāmus.
3. Luscinias laudat.
4. Luscinias laudant.
5. Luscinia laudātur.
6. Lusciniae laudantur.
7. Patriam amāmus.
8. Pro patriā² pugnabimus.
9. Nonne³ Themistōcles patriam liberāvit?
10. Patriam liberāvit.
11. Italianam libéravērunt.
12. Italia liberāta⁴ est.
13. Tarquinius templum aedificā-

¹ *Lusciniam* is the Direct Object of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

² See Rule XXXII. page 24.

³ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

⁴ For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. *Templum aedificabat.* 15. *Templa aedificavērānt.* 16. *Templa aedificāta erant.* 17. *Templum aedificātū erit.* 18. *Pučrum laudabāmus.* 19. *Pučri laudāti sunt.* 20. *Nonne¹ bellum renovātū est?*

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The nightingale is singing.
2. The nightingales are singing.
3. The nightingales will sing.
4. The boys have been praised.
5. Did you not¹ praise the boys?²
6. We praised the boys.
7. The boys will be praised.
8. Have we not¹ liberated Italy?
9. You have liberated Italy.
10. We will liberate the country.
11. We were ploughing the field.
12. Will you plough the field?
13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.³

ADVERBS.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs⁴ qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes fēliciter⁴ vivunt, The wise live happily. Cic. *Fācile⁴ doctissimūs, unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. *Haud⁴ aliter, not otherwise.* Virg.

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

³ The pupil should now review the Third Declension (48–54).

⁴ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (*live happily*). *Facile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimūs*, the most learned (*easily, i.e. unquestionably the most learned*). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs fēlīcītēr vīvunt, *The wise live happily.*

Feliciter is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI.: “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Elōquentiā, ac, <i>f.</i>	eloquence.
Expugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to take, take by storm.
Fortitēr, <i>adv.</i>	bravely.
Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, <i>f.</i>	youth.
Ornō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to adorn, be an ornament to.
Piētās, piētātīs, <i>f.</i>	filial affection, piety, duty.
Pugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to fight.
Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to preserve, keep, save.
Vōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to fly.

II. Translate into English.

1. Avis volat.
2. Aves volant.
3. Nonne¹ avis cantābat?
4. Aves cantābant.
5. Rex urbem² aedificāvit.
6. Urbs aedificāta³ est.
7. Urbes aedificātae³ erunt.
8. Milites fortiter⁴ pugnavērunt.
9. Scipio⁵ milites laudāvit.
10. Scipio⁵ militum virtūtem laudābat.
11. Scipiōnem laudāmus.
12. Scipio patrem servāvit.
13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit.
14. Urbs expugnāta est.
15. Milites patriam amant.
16. Milites⁵ pro patriā pugnābant.
17. Piētas puēros ornat.
18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

¹ See 346; II. 1, page 59.

² *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

³ Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

⁴ *Forstter*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnavērunt*, according to Rule LI.

⁵ In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing.
2. Do you not¹ love birds?²
3. We love birds.²
4. This bird will fly.
5. Did you not¹ save the city?
6. The soldiers saved the city.
7. Shepherds love the mountains.
8. We love virtue.
9. Is not virtue loved?
10. It is loved.
11. Do not the citizens praise the king?
12. They praise the king.
13. The king will be praised.
14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.³

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Convōcō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to assemble, call together.</i>
<i>Duplicō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to double, increase.</i>
<i>Dux</i> , dūcis, <i>m.</i>	<i>general, leader.</i>
<i>Fidēs</i> , fidēi, <i>f.</i>	<i>faith, fidelity, word,⁴ promise.</i>
<i>Fūgō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to rout.</i>
<i>Hōmō</i> , hōmīnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>man.</i>
<i>Sēnātūs</i> , ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>senate.</i>
<i>Stimūlō</i> , ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to stimulate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes⁵ cantum lusciniae⁶ laudant.
2. Cantus lusciniae landātur.
3. Romūlus exerceitum fugat.
4. Nonne

¹ See 346, II. 1, page 59.

² Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

³ The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 119).

⁴ To keep one's word, *fidem servāre*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

⁵ In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (51, II.), *milites* (50, II.), *stimulāvit* (205)?

⁶ See Rule XVI. page 22.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum diērum duplicavi. 12. Numerus diērum duplicatus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.¹
2. Will you not keep your word?
3. We will keep our word.
4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens.
5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised?
6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army?
7. They have praised the fidelity of the army.
8. Did not the general praise the army?
9. He praised the army.
10. The army will be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.²

EXERCISE XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibális, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hannibal</i> , Carthaginian general.
Innocens, innōcentīs,	<i>innocent.</i>
Nōbilis, č,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ā, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicus, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

¹ See note 4, preceding page.

² The pupil should now review Adjectives (146–162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam¹ ampliābat.
2. Urbem novam ampliābunt.
3. Rex urbem pulchram¹ ampliavērat.
4. Urbs pulchra servāta² est.
5. Hannibal multas civitātes occupāvit.
6. Judīces hominēm innocentissimum³ condemnāvērunt.
7. Num Punicum bellum renovātum est?
8. Nonne Punicum bellum renovātum est?
9. Punicum bellum renovātum est.
10. Romāni nobilissimas³ urbes expugnavērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city?
2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city.
3. The noble city will be saved.
4. We praise good boys.
5. Good boys will be praised.
6. Do you not praise diligent pupils?
7. Diligent pupils are praised.
8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.⁴

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aliquīs, aliquid, aliquid or aliquod,	<i>some one, somebody.</i>
Dēlectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to delight.</i>
Diligentiā, ae, f.	<i>diligence.</i>
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
Sälūtō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to salute.</i>
Suūs, ā, ūm,	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

¹ See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.² Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.³ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.⁴ The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc¹ urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te² salutāvit? 4. Pater meus¹ te salūtat. 5. Haec¹ vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos² delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se² amant. 8. Fratres tui¹ laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos³ amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos³ amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not⁴ blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not⁵ your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not⁵ some one praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not⁴ blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

¹ These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

² Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

³ The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her*, *its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

⁴ When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, *not*, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

⁵ Nonne.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnitūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

mōneō		mōnēmūs
mōnēs		mōnētīs
mōnēt;		mōnēnt.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mōnēbām		mōnēbāmūs
mōnēbās		mōnēbātīs
mōnēbāt;		mōnēbānt.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mōnēbō		mōnēbīmūs
mōnēbīs		mōnēbītīs
mōnēbīt;		mōnēbīnt.

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised.

mōnuī		mōnuīmūs
mōnuīstī		mōnuīstīs
mōnuīt;		mōnuīrūnt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mōnuērām		mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērās		mōnuērātīs
mōnuērāt;		mōnuērānt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

mōnuērō		mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērīs		mōnuērītīs
mōnuērīt;		mōnuērīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneām
mōneās
mōneāt;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūs
mōneātīs
mōneānt.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should advise.

mōnērēm
mōnērēs
mōnērēt;

mōnērēmūs
mōnērētīs
mōnērent.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mōnuērīm
mōnuērīs
mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērītīs
mōnuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

mōnuissēm
mōnuissēs
mōnuissēt;

mōnuissēmūs
mōnuissētīs
mōnuissēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē, advise thou; | mōnētē, advise ye.

FUT. mōnētō, thou shalt advise, | mōnētōtē, ye shall advise,
mōnētō, he shall advise; | mōnēntō, they shall advise

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, to advise.

PERF. mōnuissē, to have advised.

FUT. mōnītūrūs esse, to be
about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnēns, advising.

FUT. mōnītūrūs, about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen. mōnēndī, of advising,
Dat. mōnēndō, for advising,
Acc. mōnēndūm, advising,
Abl. mōnēndō, by advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. mōnēndūm, to advise,
Abl. mōnēndū, to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnērī,	mōnitūs sūm-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneōr	mōnēmūr
mōnērīs, or rē	mōnēmīnī
mōnētūr;	mōnēntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mōnēbār	mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbārīs, or rē	mōnēbāmīnī
mōnēbātūr;	mōnēbāntūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mōnēbōr	mōnēbīmūr
mōnēbērīs, or rē	mōnēbīmīnī
mōnēbētūr;	mōnēbūntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was advised.

mōnitūs sūm ¹	mōnitī sūmūs
mōnitūs ēs	mōnitī estīs
mōnitūs est;	mōnitī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mōnitūs ērām ¹	mōnitī ērāmus
mōnitūs ērās	mōnitī ērātīs
mōnitūs erāt;	mōnitī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been advised.

mōnitūs ērō ¹	mōnitī ērimūs
mōnitūs ērīs	mōnitī ēritīs
mōnitūs ērīt;	mōnitī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneār
mōneārīs, or rē
mōneātūr;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūr
mōneāmīnī
mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr
mōnērērīs, or rē
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr
mōnērēmīnī
mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm¹
mōnītūs sīs
mōnītūs sīt;

mōnītī sīmūs
mōnītī sītīs
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm¹
mōnītūs essēs
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītī essētīs
mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, *be thou advised*; | mōnēmīnī, *be ye advised.*FUT. mōnētōr, *thou shalt be advised,*
mōnētōr, *he shall be advised;*mōnēntōr, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnērī, *to be advised,*PERF. mōnītūs essē, *to have been**advised,*PERF. mōnītūs, *advised,*FUT. mōnītūm īrī, *to be about*
*to be advised.*FUT. mōnēndūs, *to be advised.*¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreō, pārērē, pāruī, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.¹ 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissem. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

¹ The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to sing.*
 Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to hope.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.¹
2. Sperant, parent.
3. Sperāmus, parēmns.
4. Sperābat, parēbat.
5. Sperābant, parēbant.
6. Sperābam, parēbam.
7. Sperabāmus, parebāmns.
8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus.
9. Sperābo, parēbo.
10. Sperāvi, parui.
11. Speravēram, paruēram.
12. Speravēro, paruēro.
13. Speravīmus, parauīmus.
14. Speravērat, paruērat.
15. Speravērint, paruērint.
16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise.
2. I was singing, I was advising.
3. I will sing, I will advise.
4. He will hope, he will obey.
5. They will hope, they will obey.
6. They were singing, they were advising.
7. They sing, they advise.
8. He has hoped, he has obeyed.
9. They have hoped, they have obeyed.
10. He had sung, he had obeyed.
11. They had sung, they had obeyed.
12. We had hoped, we had advised.
13. We would sing, we would obey.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations,—the First and the Second,—and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXX.

I. Vocabulary.

Aurūmī, ī, n.	gold.
Flōs, flōrīs, m.	flower.
Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm,	to have, hold.
Měreō, měrērē, měruī, měritūm,	to deserve, merit.
Philōsōphūs, ī, m.	philosopher.
Pondūs, pondērīs, n.	weight, mass.
Praebeō, praebērē, praebuī, praebitūm,	to furnish, give.
Praemiūm, īī, n.	reward.
Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūm,	to be silent.
Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm,	to frighten, terrify.

II. Translate into English.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puéri libros habent. 3. Libros utiles¹ habēmus. 4. Librum utilem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum¹ amīcum habēbis? 6. Bonum amīcum habēbo. 7. Bonos amīcos habuīmus. 8. Rex amīcos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex² magnum auri pondus³ habuērat. 11. Gloriam veram habebitis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philosōphus tacēbat. 15. Discipūlus praemium meret.

¹ Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

² In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

³ When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *aurei*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum aurei pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book?
2. I have your book.
3. Which book have you?
4. I have three¹ books.
5. My brother has ten books.
6. The king had a golden crown.
7. Did he not have many friends?
8. He had many friends.
9. You will have true friends.
10. The pupils are silent.²
11. Will you not be silent?
12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moncor, monēbar, monēbor.
2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur.
3. Moneātur, moneantur.
4. Monerētur, monerentur.
5. Monītus est, monīti sunt.
6. Monītus erat, monīti erant.
7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt.
8. Monētor, monentor.
9. Monet, monētur.
10. Monent, monēntur.
11. Monēbat, Monebātur.
12. Monēbant, monebantur.
13. Monēbit, monebītur.
14. Monēbunt, monebuntur.
15. Monēmus, monēmur.
16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur.
17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised.
2. I was terrified, we were terrified.
3. He will be advised, they will be advised.
4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified.
5. He had been advised, he had been terrified.
6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified.
7. I advise, I am advised.
8. I was advising, I was advised.
9. I shall advise, I shall be advised.
10. They terrify, they are terrified.
11. They were terrifying, they were terrified.
12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

¹ Place the Numeral before the noun.² *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnitūm,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreō, terrērē, terrui, territūm,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmūr. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmūr. 5. Invitabātūr, terrebātūr. 6. Invitabāntur, terrebāntur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabitūr, terrebītūr. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātūs sum, terrītūs sum. 11. Invitātī sumus, terrītī sumus. 12. Invitātūs est, terrītūs est. 13. Invitātī sunt, terrītī sunt. 14. Invitātī erant, terrītī erant. 15. Invitātūs erat, terrītūs erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Apūd, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
<i>Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitūm,</i>	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
<i>Frāter, frātrīs, m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
<i>Māgistēr, māgistrī, m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
<i>Mēmōriā, ae, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
<i>Puēr, puērī, m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
<i>Quīs, quae, quid,¹</i>	<i>who, which, what?</i>
<i>Rectē, adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
<i>Tuūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>your, yours.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Quis monētur?* 2. *Nonne puer monētur?* 3. *Puer recte monētur.* 4. *Puēri recte monentur.* 5. *Discipūli recte monēti sunt.* 6. *Discipūlus recte monētus est.* 7. *Frater tuus recte admonētus erit.* 8. *Fratres tui recte admonēti erunt.* 9. *Nonne admonēti sumus?* 10. *Recte admonēti sumus.* 11. *Memoria exercētur.* 12. *Memoria*

¹ For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceātur.¹ 13. Memoria exercebitur. 14. Discipūli apud magistros exercecentur.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified.
3. Let² the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished.
5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised.
7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised.
9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself³ was not terrified.
11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Cāmillūs, ī, m.	<i>Camillus</i> , Roman general.
Exspectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to await, expect.</i>
Hostīs, is, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
Ingens, ingentīs,	<i>huge, large, great.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnīs, f.	<i>legion, body of soldiers.</i>
Nōn, adv.	<i>not.</i>
Nūmērūs, ī, m.	<i>number.</i>
Optō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to wish for, desire.</i>
Pēcūniā, ae, f.	<i>money.</i>

¹ *Exerceātur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196, I. 2.

² *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

³ *Himself* = ipse. See 186.

Philosóphus, ī, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliūm, ii, n.	<i>battle.</i>
Rōmānūs, ī, m.	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērēcundiā, ae, f.	<i>modesty.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit.
2. Hostes superāti sunt.
3. Omnes discipūli paruērant.¹
4. Romāni hostem exspectābant.
5. Romāni² ingentem hostium numērum³ exspecta-vērant.¹
6. Hostes proelium exspectābant.
7. Praeceptor tacēbat.
8. Discipūli tacēbant.
9. Verecundia juventūtem ornat.
10. Philosóphus pecuniam non habet.
11. Philosóphi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me?
2. We are expecting you.
3. Did you not await the enemy?⁴
4. We awaited the enemy.
5. Have you not a good memory?
6. I have a good memory.
7. Will the soldiers obey?
8. The brave soldiers will obey.
9. Camillus had an army.
10. He praised the army.
11. Did you advise the boy?
12. We advised the boys.
13. Were not the enemy put to flight?⁵
14. They were put to flight.

¹ In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

² Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

³ *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

⁴ Put the Latin word in the plural.

⁵ *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgō

rēgīs

rēgīt;

PLURAL.

rēgīmūs

rēgītīs

rēgūnt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rēgēbām

rēgēbās

rēgēbāt;

rēgēbāmūs

rēgēbātīs

rēgēbānt.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

rēgām

rēgēs

rēgēt;

rēgēmūs

rēgētīs

rēgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī

rexistī

rexīt;

rexīmūs

rexistīs

rexērunt, or ērō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexērām

rexērās

rexērāt;

rexērāmūs

rexērātīs

rexērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexērō

rexērīs

rexērīt;

rexērīmūs

rexērītīs

rexērīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgām
rēgās
rēgāt;

rēgāmūs
rēgātīs
rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should rule.

rēgērēm
rēgērēs
rēgēret;

rēgērēmūs
rēgērētīs
rēgērent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexērīm
rexērīs
rexērīt;

rexērīmūs
rexērītīs
rexērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.

rexissēm
rexissēs
rexissēt;

rexissēmūs
rexissētīs
rexissēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, *rule thou;*| rēgītē, *rule ye.*FUT. rēgītō, *thou shalt rule,*
rēgītō, *he shall rule;*| rēgītōtē, *ye shall rule,*
rēguntō, *they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgērē, *to rule.*PRES. rēgens, *ruling.*PERF. rexissē, *to have ruled.*FUT. rectūrūs essē, *to be about
to rule.*FUT. rectūrūs, *about to rule.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	rēgendī,	<i>of ruling,</i>	
Dat.	rēgendō,	<i>for ruling,</i>	
Acc.	rēgendūm,	<i>ruling,</i>	
Abl.	rēgendō,	<i>by ruling.</i>	

Acc.	rectūm,	<i>to rule,</i>
Abl.	rectū,	<i>to rule, be ruled.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

rēgōr,

Pres. Inf.

rēgī,

Perf. Ind.

rectūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgōr

rēgērīs, or rē

rēgitūr;

PLURAL.

rēgīmūr

rēgīmīnī

rēguntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rēgēbār

rēgēbārīs, or rē

rēgēbātūr;

rēgēbāmūr

rēgēbāmīnī

rēgēbāntūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār

rēgērīs, or rē

rēgētūr;

rēgēmūr

rēgēmīnī

rēgentūr.

PAST.

*I have been or was ruled.*rectūs sūm¹

rectūs ēs

rectūs est;

rectī sūmūs

rectī estīs

rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rectūs ērām¹

rectūs ērās

rectūs ērāt;

rectī ērāmūs

rectī ērātīs

rectī ērānt.

FUTURE PAST.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rectūs ērō¹

rectūs ērīs

rectūs ērīt;

rectī ērīmūs

rectī ērītīs

rectī ērīnt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgār
rēgārīs, or rē
rēgātūr;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūr
rēgāmīnī
rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be ruled.

rēgērēr
rēgērōrīs, or rē
rēgērētūr;

rēgērēmūr
rēgērēmīnī
rēgērēntūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm¹
rectūs sīs
rectūs sīt;

rectī sīmūs
rectī sītīs
rectī sīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm¹
rectūs essēs
rectūs essēt;

rectī essēmūs
rectī essētīs
rectī essēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, *be thou ruled*; | rēgimīnī, *be ye ruled*.FUT. rēgītōr, *thou shalt be ruled*, | rēgītōr, *he shall be ruled*; | rēguntōr, *ye shall be ruled*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgī, *to be ruled*.PERF. rectūs essē, *to have been ruled*.FUT. rectūmītrī, *to be about to be ruled*.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. rectūs, *ruled*.FUT. rēgendūs, *to be ruled*.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXV.

I. Vocabulary.

Dūcō, črē, duxī, ductūm, *to lead.*
 Rēgō, črē, rexī, reetūm, *to rule, govern.*

II. Translate into English.

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus.
3. Regītis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis.
5. Regēbant, regēbat.
6. Reget, regent.
7. Rexērunt, rexit.
8. Rexi, rexēram, rexēro.
9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus.
10. Regas, regēres, rexēris, rexisses.
11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis.
12. Regam, regāmus.
13. Regerēmus, regērem.
14. Rexērit, rexērint.
15. Rexissent, rexisset.
16. Rege, regētē.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead.
2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule.
3. They lead, they rule.
4. They were leading, they were ruling.
5. They will lead, they will rule.
6. You have led, you have ruled.
7. He had led, he had ruled.
8. They had led, they had ruled.
9. He will have led, he will have ruled.
10. They may lead, they may rule.
11. He would lead, he would rule.
12. They would lead, they would rule.
13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm, *to say, tell, speak.*
 Vōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *to call.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.¹
2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt.
3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant.
4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam.
5. Vocavīmus, tacuīmus, dixīmus.
6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi.
7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt.
8. Vocavērat, tacuērat, dixērat.
9. Vocavērint, tacuērint, dixērint.
10. Vocem, taceam, dicam.
11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicērent.
12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead.
2. We call, we are silent, we speak.
3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading.
4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak.
5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led.
6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled.
7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken.
8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

¹ In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented,—the First, the Second, and the Third,—and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Anīmūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>mind, passion.</i>
Bēnē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>well.</i>
Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>eclipse.</i>
Dīsertē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>clearly, eloquently.</i>
Edūeō, ēdūečrē, ēduxī, ēduetūm,	<i>to lead forth.</i>
Indīcō, indicērē, indixī, indietūm,	<i>to declare.</i>
Lātīnē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>in Latin.</i>
Praedīcō, praedīcērē, praedixī, praedictūm,	<i>to predict, foretell.</i>
Sāpientēr, <i>adv.</i>	<i>wisely.</i>
Thālēs, īs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Thales, a philosopher.</i>
Tullūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Tullus, a Roman name.</i>
Vērūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>truth.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Ciečro in senātu dixērat?
3. Ciečro diserte dicebat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5. Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixērant. 7. Oratōres Latīne dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercītum in Italiam duxit. 10. Quis bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regñmūr, regebāmūr, regēmūr.
 3. Regar, regāmūr. 4. Regerētūr, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Reeti sunt, recti
 erant, reeti erunt. 7. Regit, regitūr. 8. Regunt, reguntūr.
 9. Regēbat, regebātūr. 10. Regēbant, regebantūr. 11. Re-
 get, regētūr. 12. Regent, regentūr. 13. Regīmus, regī-
 mūr. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmūr. 15. Regēmus, regēmūr.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led.
 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were
 ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We
 have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led.
 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled.
 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they
 may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmūr, monēmūr, du-
 cimūr. 3. Vocātūr, monētūr, dueitūr. 4. Vocabātūr,
 monebātūr, dueebātūr. 5. Vocabantūr, monebantūr, duee-
 bantūr. 6. Vocabuntūr, monebuntūr, duecentūr. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocati estis, moniti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocatus eram, monitus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocatus erit, monitus erit, ductus erit.

II. Translate into Latin.

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE. OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. Vocabulary.

Mundūs, ī, m.	<i>world.</i>
Semper, <i>adv.</i>	<i>always, ever.</i>
Vērūm, ī, n.	<i>truth.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hie mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regetur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Animus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum¹ erat. 11. Multa bella indicta¹ sunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

¹ Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let¹ the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Gallus</i> , a proper name.
Hirundō, hirundinīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>swallow.</i>
Lūnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>moon.</i>
Nuntiō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to proclaim, announce.</i>
Sensūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>feeling, perception.</i>
Suppliciūm, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>punishment.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipūli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

¹ *Let be spoken*, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. *Audio, I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audīrē,	audīvī,	audītūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō	|	audīmūs
audīs		audītīs
audit;		audiunt.

PLURAL.

audiēbām	|	audiēbāmūs
audiēbās		audiēbātīs
audiēbāt;		audiēbānt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiēbām	|	audiēbāmūs
audiēbās		audiēbātīs
audiēbāt;		audiēbānt.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiām	|	audiēmūs
audiēs		audiētīs
audiēt;		audiēnt.

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

audiū	|	audiūmūs
audiūstī		audiūstīs
audiūt;		audiūrunt, or ērō.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiērām	|	audiērāmūs
audiērās		audiērātīs
audiērāt;		audiērānt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audiērō	|	audiērīmūs
audiērīs		audiērītīs
audiērīt;		audiērīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

SINGULAR.

- audiām
audiās
audiāt;

PLURAL.

audiāmūs
audiātīs
audiant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should hear.

audiārēm
audiārēs
audiārēt;

audiārēmūs
audiārētīs
audiārent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audiāvērim
audiāvēris
audiāvērit;

audiāvērimūs
audiāvēritīs
audiāvērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have heard.

audiāvissēm
audiāvissēs
audiāvissēt;

audiāvissēmūs
audiāvissētīs
audiāvissēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, *hear thou;*| audiē, *hear ye.*FUT. audiātō, *thou shalt hear,*
audiātō, *he shall hear;*| audiātō, *ye shall hear,*
audiātō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audiārē, *to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiēns, *heuring.*PERF. audiāvissē, *to have heard.*FUT. audiātūrūs, *about to hear.*FUT. audiātūrūs essē, *to be
about to hear.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. audiēndī, *of hearing.*Dat. audiēndō, *for hearing.*Acc. audiēndūm, *hearing.*Abl. audiēndō, *by hearing.*Acc. audiātūm, *to hear.*Abl. audiātū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. *Audior, I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
<i>audiōr,</i>	<i>audīrī,</i>	<i>auditūs sūm.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>audiōr</i>		<i>audīmār</i>
<i>audiōrīs, or rē</i>		<i>audīmānī</i>
<i>auditār;</i>		<i>audiuntār.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

<i>audiēbār</i>		<i>audiēbāmār</i>
<i>audiēbārīs, or rē</i>		<i>audiēbāmānī</i>
<i>audiēbātār;</i>		<i>audiēbāntār.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

<i>audiēr</i>		<i>audiēmār</i>
<i>audiērīs, or rē</i>		<i>audiēmānī</i>
<i>audiētār;</i>		<i>audiēntār.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

<i>auditūs sūmī¹</i>		<i>auditī sūmūs</i>
<i>auditūs ēs</i>		<i>auditī estīs</i>
<i>auditūs est;</i>		<i>auditī sunt.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

<i>auditūs ērāmī¹</i>		<i>auditī ērāmūs</i>
<i>auditūs ērās</i>		<i>auditī ērātīs</i>
<i>auditūs ērāt;</i>		<i>auditī ērānt.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been heard.

<i>auditūs ērō¹</i>		<i>auditī ērimūs</i>
<i>auditūs ērīs</i>		<i>auditī ēritīs</i>
<i>auditūs ērīt;</i>		<i>auditī ērunt.</i>

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiār	audiāmūr
audiārīs, or rē	audiāmīnī
audiātūr;	audiāntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be heard.

audīrēr	audīrēmār
audīrērīs, or rē	audīrēmīnī
audīrētūr;	audīrēntūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

auditās sīm ¹	auditī sīmūs
auditās sīs	auditī sītīs
auditūs sīt;	auditī sīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been heard.

auditūs essēm ¹	auditī essēmūs
auditūs essēs	auditī essētīs
auditūs essēt;	auditī essēnt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audīrē, *be thou heard*; audīmīnī, *be ye heard*.FUT. audītōr, *thou shalt be heard*, | audītōr, *he shall be heard*; | audiāntōr, *they shall be heard*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīrī, *to be heard*.PERF. auditās essē, *to have been
heard*.FUT. auditāmīrī, *to be about
to be heard*.

PARTICIPLE.

PERR. auditās, *heard*.FUT. audiendūs, *to be heard*.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to guard.</i>
Dormiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to sleep.</i>
Erūdiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to instruct, refine, educate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Audit̄is, audiebāt̄is, audiēt̄is. 3. Audio, audīmus. 4. Audiēbam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audiūmus, audiverāmus, audiuerīmus. 7. Audīvi, audiūram, audiūro. 8. Audīvit, audiūrunt. 9. Audiam, audīrem, audiūrim, audiūssem. 10. Audiāmus, audiūremus, audiuerīmus, audiūssemus. 11. Audiōto, audiōtōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invītat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invītant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cēbant, cūstodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonučram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonučrim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonučrunt, duxērunt, audi-
vērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Arctē, adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
<i>Mūniō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,</i>	<i>to fortify.</i>
<i>Sermō, sermōnīs, m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
<i>Thrāsybūlūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Thrasylus, Athenian general.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus.
3. Milites templum custodiunt. 4. Verum audītis. 5. Ve-
rum audīte. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audī-
mus. 8. Verba mea audivīsti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audīvi.
10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arce dormiunt. 12.
Puēri cantum lusciniae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybūlus urbem
munīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us?
2. We hear you.
3. Who heard the oration?
4. We heard the oration.
5. The pupils heard the conversation.
6. They did not hear your oration.
7. The citizens are fortifying the city.
8. Who will guard this beautiful city?
9. The brave soldiers will guard the city.
10. Will you guard the temple?
11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmūr, audiēmūr.
2. Audiātūr, audiāntūr.
3. Audirer, audirēmūr.
4. Audītūs sum, audītūsumus.
5. Audītī erāmūs, audītūs eram.
6. Audītūs erit, audītī erunt.
7. Audit, audītūr.
8. Audiunt, audiuntur.
9. Audiet, audiētūr.
10. Audīrem, audirer.
11. Audiēbam, audiēbar.
12. Audiēbat, audiebātūr.
13. Audīvit, audītūs est.
14. Audivērat, audītūs erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed.
2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed.
3. They have been heard, they have been instructed.
4. They had been heard, he had been instructed.
5. He was instructing, he was instructed.
6. They are instructing, they are instructed.
7. We have heard, you have been heard.
8. You have instructed, we have been instructed.
9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodiris. 2. Invitan-tur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educit̄ur, custodit̄ur. 4. Invitabitur, admoneb-it̄ur, educēt̄ur, custodiēt̄ur. 5. Invitabātur, admonebātur, educēbātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonitus sum, éductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admoniti erant, educti erant, custoditi erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonitus essem̄, custoditus essem̄.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, ī, n.	<i>war.</i>
Bēnignē, adv.	<i>kindly.</i>
Civiliš, č.	<i>civil.</i>

<i>Egrēgiē</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
<i>Filiūs</i> , <i>ii</i> , <i>m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
<i>Finiō</i> , <i>irē</i> , <i>ivī</i> , <i>itūm</i> ,	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
<i>Lēgātiō</i> , <i>lēgātiōnis</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
<i>Vox</i> , <i>vōcis</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Vox audīta¹ est.
2. Voces audiuntur.
3. Cantus lusciniæ auditur.
4. Cantus lusciniārum audiētur.
5. Urbs munita erat.
6. Urbes munitentur.
7. Templum custodiētur.
8. Templa custodiuntur.
9. Legatio benigne audīta est.
10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur.
11. Verba tua benigne audiēntur.
12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur.
13. Bellum civile finītum¹ est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Was not the orator heard?
2. The renowned orator was kindly heard.
3. Let the city be fortified.²
4. Let the temples be guarded.
5. The city has been fortified.
6. The temples will be guarded.
7. Let the war be brought to a close.
8. Let the boys be instructed.
9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Athēniensis</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
<i>Cānis</i> , <i>cānis</i> , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
<i>Cōlō</i> , <i>cōlērē</i> , <i>cōlūi</i> , <i>cultūm</i> ,	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
<i>Cūm</i> , <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

¹ Why *audīta* and *finītum*, instead of *audītus* and *finītus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

² *Let be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Grex, grēgis, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illustrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābōr, lābōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovīs, ūvīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prūdentia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Välētūdō, välētūdinīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia pueros ornat. 3. Discipuli memoriam exerceant. 4. Discipuli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptores juventūtem erudiant. 8. Labor valetudinem tuam firmābit. 9. Varietas nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos eruditivit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always¹ be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who² led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

¹ For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

² Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

VERBS IN *io* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation; and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpērē,	cēpī,	captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiō, cāpīs, cāpīt;	| cāpīmūs, cāpītīs, cāpiunt.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;	| cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbānt.
FUTURE.	
cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	| cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -iēnt.
PERFECT.	
cēpī, -istī, -ētī;	| cēpīmūs, -istīs, -ērunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;	| cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēpērō, -ērīs, -ērīt;	| cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;	| cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iānt.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;	| cāpērēmūs, -ērētīs, -ērent.
PERFECT.	
cēpērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt;	| cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērint.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;	| cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PRES. cāpē;

FUT. cāpītō,
cāpītō;

PLURAL.

cāpītē.

cāpītōtē,
cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpērē.

PERF. cēpissē.

FUT. captūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. cāpiens.

FUT. captūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen. cāpiendī.

Dat. cāpiendō.

Acc. cāpiendūm.

Abl. cāpiendō.

SUPINE.

Acc. captūm.

Abl. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

cāpiōr,

Pres. Inf.

cāpī,

Perf. Ind.

captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

cāpiōr, cāpērīs, cāpītūr; | cāpīmūr, cāpīmīnī, cāpiuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

cāpiēbār, -iēbārīs, -iēbātūr; | cāpiēbāmūr, -iēbāmīnī, -iēbāntūr.

FUTURE.

cāpiār, -iērīs, -iētūr; | cāpiēmūr, -iēmīnī, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captūs sūm, ēs, est; | captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captūs ērām, ērās, ērātūr; | captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captūs ērō, ērīs, ērītūr; | captī ērīmūs, ērītīs, ērunt.

S U B J U N C T I V E.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

cäpiär, -iärīs, -iätür ; | cäpiämür, -iämīnī, -iantür.

IMPERFECT.

cäpérčr, -čréris, -čréterü ; | cäpérémür, -črémiňi, -črentür.

PERFECT.

captüs süm, sis, sit ; | capti sümüs, sitüs, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captüs essüm, esses, esset ; | capti essümüs, essetüs, essent.

I M P E R A T I V E.

PRES. cäpérč ; | cäpřimini.

FUT. cäpitör,
cäpitör ; | cäpiuntör.

I N F I N I T I V E.

PRES. cäpi.

PERF. captüs essč.

FUT. captüm iri.

P A R T I C I P L E.

PERF. captüs.

FUT. cäpiendüs.¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, prep. with abl.	from, by.
Accipiō, accipérč, accēpi, acceptüm,	to receive.
Bellüm, i, n.	war.
Cäpiō, cäpérč, cēpi, captüm,	to take, capture.
Carthágō, Carthāginis, f.	Carthage, city in Africa.
Cornēliüs, ii, m.	Cornelius, a proper name.
Gallüs, i, m.	Gaul, a Gaul. ²

¹ The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

² The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jāciō, jācērē, jēcī, jactūm,	<i>to cast, throw, hurl.</i>
Lāpis, lāpidis, <i>m.</i>	<i>stone.</i>
Lux, lūcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>light.</i>
Mūrūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>wall.</i>
Publiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Publius, a proper name.</i>
Rēgūlūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Regulus, Roman general.</i>
Tēlūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>javelin.</i>
Trōjā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Troy, city in Asia Minor.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta¹ est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regūlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces eapientur. 7. Haec urbs capiēt-
tur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis² capta
erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitā-
tes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accipit. 13. Lucem a
sole accipimus. 14. Tuam³ epistōlam accēpi. 15. Milites
tela jaciēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken.
3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken.
5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who⁴ took Carthage?
7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Hāve you
not⁵ received my letter? 9. I have received your letter.
10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have
received ten letters.

¹ For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

² See Rule XXXII., page 24.

³ What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

⁴ Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

⁵ Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnece ūris fēlix, multos nūmērābis āmīcos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example, two simple sentencees, (1) “*You will be prosperous,*” and (2) “*You will number many friends,*” are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends, (when?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cie.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word,—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Justitiam cōle, *Cultivate justice.* Cie.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation:

Rēliquit quos viros, *What heroes he has left!* Cie.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius mōritur, *Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers:

In his castris Clūilius, Albānus rex, mōrītur; *Clūilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Clūilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris morītur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.¹

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*² dēerēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*² ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cie.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

*Miltiādes est accūsātus,*³ *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es tes-*
tis, You are a witness. Cic. *Fortūna caeca est,* *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.⁴

¹ Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Clūilius*; the complex, *Clūilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *mōrītur*; the complex, *in his castris morītur*.

² In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

³ In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accusātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

⁴ Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—*Predicate Nouns.*¹

362. A *Predicate Noun*² denoting the same person or thing as its *Subject* agrees with it in **CASE**:

Ego sum nuntius,² *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclarātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

EXERCISE L.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amnīs, amnīs, <i>m.</i>	river.
Creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Impērātōr, impērātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Lātīnūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lāvīniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Mālūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nōmīnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhēnūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Serviūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultītiū, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tūm, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then, at that time.</i>

¹ In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

² See 352, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicero *consul*¹ fuit.²
2. Cicero *orātor* fuit.
3. Cicero tum³ erat² *orātor* clarissimus.⁴
4. Puer *orātor* erit.
5. Numa erat rex.
6. Numa rex¹ creātus est.
7. Cato imperātor fuit.
8. Cato magnus imperātor fuit.
9. Scipio consul creātus est.
10. Scipio consul fuērat.
11. Stultitia est malum.
12. Gloria est fructus virtūtis.
13. Graecia artium⁵ mater nominātur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*.
2. Rome was a beautiful *city*.
3. Cato was a wise *man*.
4. Your father is a wise man.
5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king.
6. Latinus was king.
7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus.
8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive⁶ agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex⁶ mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Urbes Carthāgo⁶ atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

¹ Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

² For the place of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

³ Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

⁴ See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁵ *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 22.

⁶ See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthāgo*, and *Nūmantia* are all Predicate Nouns.

EXERCISE LI.

I. Vocabulary.

Alexandér, Alexandrī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Alexander, the Great.</i>
Conjux, conjūgīs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>wife, husband.</i>
Epirús, ī, <i>f.</i>	<i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>
Eruditús, ā, ūm,	<i>learned, instructed in.</i>
Hannō, Hannōnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i>
Justús, ā, ūm,	<i>just, upright.</i>
Mācēdōniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>
Nēpōs, nēpōtīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
Paulús, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>
Philippūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>
Pyrrhūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
Vulnērō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to wound.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicero, eruditissimus *homo*,¹ consul² fuit. 2. Numa, justissimus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Aneus, Numae *nepos*,¹ rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.³ 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulneratus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superavit. 7. Paulus consul¹ regein superavit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonarum artium, nos erudit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Tullia, *the daughter*¹ of Servius, was the wife² of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

¹ Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

² Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

³ See 214.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I.	Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II.	Vocative,	Case of Address.
III.	Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV.	Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V.	Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI.	Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open.* Cie. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cie.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—See 460, 2, p. 54.

EXERCISE LII.

I. Vocabulary.

Lībertās, libertātis, f.	liberty.
Opūlentūs, ă, ūm,	rich, opulent.
Quōtidīē, adv.	daily.
Vitiūm, ii, n.	fault, vice.
Oppidum, i, n.	town, city.

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*¹ liberāta² est. 2. *Urbs Roma* liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissima liberabitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissima est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudatur. 6. Virtutes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudata. 8. Libertas semper laudabitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnata sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli,³ Proceed, *Laelius*. Cie. Quid est, Cātilina,³ Why is it, *Catiline*? Cie. Tuum est, Servi,³ regnum. The kingdom is yours, *Servius*. Liv.

EXERCISE LIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Auditōr, auditōris, <i>m.</i>	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear.
Jūvēnis, īs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	ambassador.
Sālūtō, īrē, īvī, ītūmī,	to salute.

¹ Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

² Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

³ *Laeli*, *Catilina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Tu, Scipio,*¹ salutāmus. 2. *Vos, amīci*¹ carissimī,² salūto. 3. *Vos, auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. *Verba mea, judīces,* audīte. 5. *Haec verba, legāti,* audīte. 6. *Vos, milītes,* hanc urbem clarissimam custodīte. 7. *Milītes*¹ fortissimī, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. *Vestram virtūtem, juvēnes,* laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys,*¹ hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges,* you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father,* have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. *Soldiers,* you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. *Pupils,* I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—**Direct Object.**

371. The Direct Object³ of an action is put in the Accusative :

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world.*⁴ Cie. *Libera rem publicam, Free the republic.* Cie. *Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cie.

¹ In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

² See 162.

³ See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

⁴ See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

EXERCISE LIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Flāmīniūs, ii, m.	<i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general.
Marcellūs, i, m.	<i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general.
Poenūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian</i> .
Poenus, ī, m.	<i>a Carthaginian</i> .
Sanetūs, ā, ūm,	<i>holy, sacred</i> .
Siciliā, ae, f.	<i>Sicily</i> , the island of.
Spōliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .
Syrācūsae, ārūm, f. plur.	<i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily.

II. Translate into English.

1. Alexander multas *urbes*¹ expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliavērunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium¹ consūlem² superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavērant. 7. Marcellus³ magnam hujus insūlæ⁴ partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,¹ nobilissimam urbem,² expugnāvit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Do you not⁵ love your *parents*?¹ 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise virtue. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy⁶ taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

¹ Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

² Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

³ Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

⁴ *Hujus insūlæ*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

⁵ See 346, II. 1.

⁶ The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmūlus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos,¹ *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passum ambūlāre, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pēdes¹ alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

EXERCISE LV.

I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggērīs, m.	<i>mound, rampart.</i>
Ambūlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to walk.</i>
Centūm,	<i>hundred.</i>
Glādiūs, iī, m.	<i>sword.</i>
Lăcēdaemōniūs, iī, m.	<i>a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.</i>
Lātūs, ā, ūm,	<i>broad, wide.</i>
Longūs, ā, ūm,	<i>long.</i>
Mensīs, mensīs, m.	<i>month.</i>
Nox, noctīs, f.	<i>night.</i>
Octōgintā,	<i>eighty.</i>
Pēs, pēdīs, m.	<i>foot.</i>
Quinquāgintā,	<i>fifty.</i>
Regnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to reign.</i>
Vigilō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to watch, be awake.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos² servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem² vigilavēram. 3. Puer octo horas

¹ *Annos* denotes Duration of Time, while *millia* and *pedes* denote Extent of Space. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

² In the Accusative denoting Duration of Time. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormīvit. 4. Latīnus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italiaā sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes¹ latus fuit. 8. Hie gladius sex pedes longus est.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*.
3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight hours.
5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months.
6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months.
8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.
 Plāto Tārentum² vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquiniōs,² *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVI.

I. Vocabulary.

Athēnae, ārūm, f. plur.	Athens, capital of Attica.
Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgitūm,	to flee, fly, run away.
Lȳsandēr, Lȳsandri, m.	Lysander, Spartan general.
Miltiādēs, īs, m.	Miltiades, Athenian general.
Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to sail, sail to.

¹ In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

² *Rōmam*, *Tārentum*, and *Tarquiniōs* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rēdūcō, rēdūcērē, rēdūxi, rēductūm,	<i>to lead back.</i>
Rēvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to recall.</i>
Spartā, ae, f.	<i>Sparta, capital of Laconia.</i>
Tārentūm, ī, n.	<i>Tarentum, Italian town.</i>
Thēbānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Theban.</i>
Thēbānūs, ī, m.	<i>a Theban.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cicero Romam¹ revocātus est.
2. Consūles Romam revocāti sunt.
3. Hannibal Carthaginem¹ revocātus erat.
4. Lysander Athēnas¹ navigāvit.
5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est.
6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit.
7. Thebāni exercitūm Spartam ducunt.
8. Miltiādes exercitūm Athēnas reduxit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who fled to Carthage?²
2. Did not the enemy flee to Carthage?
3. They fled to Carthage.
4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?²
5. The army has been led back to Rome.
6. The commander led the army to Athens.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

- I. With Verbs.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With their Derivatives,—Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

¹ In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

² The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action,—that to or for which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

*Tempōri*¹ cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cie. *Sibi tīmuērant,* *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. *Lābōri stūdent,* *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. *Nōbis*¹ *vīta dāta est,* *Life has been granted to us.* Cie. *Nūmītōri dēdītur,* *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

*Pons īter hostībus*² dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. *Lēges cīvītātībus suis scripsērunt,* *They prepared laws for their states.* Cie.

*

EXERCISE LVII.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Carthāgīniensīs, č,</i>	<i>Carthaginian.</i>
<i>Carthāgīniensīs, īs, m. and f.</i>	<i>a Carthaginian.</i>
<i>Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, m.</i>	<i>Conon, Athenian gen'l.</i>
<i>Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbuī, dēbitūm,</i>	<i>to owe.</i>
<i>Displīceō, displīcērē, displīcuī, displīcītūm,</i>	<i>to displease.</i>
<i>Dōnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>to give.</i>
<i>Gens, gentīs, f.</i>	<i>race.</i>
<i>Grātiā, ae, f.</i>	<i>favor, gratitude, thanks.</i>
<i>Lābōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>to strive for.</i>

¹ *Tempōri, sibi, and labōri* are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cēdit, timuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nōbis* and *Nūmītōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *dēdītur*.

² *Hostībus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dēdit*. In the same way, *cīvītātībus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

Monstrō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	<i>to show, point out.</i>
Plāceō, plācērē, plācēmī, plācētūmī,	<i>to please.</i>
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>old age.</i>
Sententiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>opinion.</i>
Serviō, servirē, servivī, servitūmī,	<i>to serve.</i>
Vīa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>way, road.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Cives *legibus*¹ parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitātes *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesāri*¹ placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesāri* displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium *Caesāri* nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostībus nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*² magnam *gratiam* habēmus. 9. Habeo *senectūtī* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civībus donāvit. 11. Pastor puero viam monstrāvit. 12. *Tibi* viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensībus bellum indixērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my³ *father?*¹ 2. You obeyed your *father*. 3. We will obey the *laws* of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the *king*? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell *me* (to me⁴) the *truth*?⁵ 9. I have told *you* (to you) the *truth*. 10. Will you show

¹ Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

² Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

³ In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

⁴ Dative. See Rule XII. II.

⁵ Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13. They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the object to which the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae solum omnibus¹ carum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cie. Id aptum est tempori, *This is adapted to the time.* Cie. Omni aetati mors est communis, *Death is common to every age.* Cie. Canis similis lupo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cie. Naturae accommodatum, *Adapted to nature.* Cie. Graeciae utile, *Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis.*

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Amicus, a, um,	<i>friendly.</i>
Hispānia, ac, f.	<i>Spain.</i>
Multitudo, multitūdinis, f.	<i>multitude.</i>
Saguntum, i, n.	<i>Saguntum, city in Spain.</i>
Similis, ē,	<i>like.</i>
Solum, i, n.	<i>soil.</i>
Vēritas, vēritatis, f.	<i>verity, truth.</i>

¹ Dative, showing to whom the soil is *dear*, — *dear TO ALL.* In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*¹ cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est.
3. Patria *tibi*¹ erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum est.
5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romana grata fuit.
7. Libertas multitudini grata est. 8. Veritas nobis gratissima est.
9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10. Saguntum Romani amicum fuit.
11. Hannibal Saguntum,² Hispaniae civitatem³ Romani amicam,⁴ expugnavit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are useful *to us*.
3. They will be useful *to you*. 4. This law has been useful to the state.
5. Will not this book be acceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me.
7. This book will be most acceptable⁶ to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

¹ Dative, according to Rule XIV.

² Accusative. See Rule V.

³ Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

⁴ Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

⁵ *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁶ See 162.

Catōnis¹ oratiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmīlēaris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

EXERCISE LIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Commūnis, ē,	<i>common.</i>
Conscientiā, ae, f.	<i>consciousness.</i>
Dulcīs, ē,	<i>sweet, pleasant.</i>
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	<i>honor.</i>
Orbīs, orbīs, m.	<i>circle, world.</i>
Orbīs terrārum, ²	<i>the world.</i>
Parvūs, ā, ūm,	<i>small.</i>
Principiūm, ii, n.	<i>beginning.</i>
Rectūm, i, n.	<i>rectitude, right.</i>
Sōcratēs, is, m.	<i>Socrates, Athenian philosopher.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Justitia virtūtum³ regīna est.
2. Sapientia est mater omnium bonārum artiūm.
3. Soerātes parens philosophiae fuit.
4. Virtus veri honōris⁴ mater est.
5. Patria commūnis⁵ est omnium nostrum⁶ parens.
6. Roma orbis⁷ terrārum caput fuit.
7. Omnium rerum principia parva sunt.
8. Conscientia recti est praemium virtūtis duleissimum.

¹ *Catōnis* qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

² Literally *the circle of lands*.

³ Genitive, depending upon *regīna*. Rule XVI.

⁴ Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

⁵ *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

⁶ Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

⁷ *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārum* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of *Cicero* are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus laudis,¹ *Desirous of praise*. Cie. *Otii cūpidus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cie. *Efficiens volūptatis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cie. *Glōriae mēmor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of, in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbs in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries.

EXERCISE LX.

I. Vocabulary.

Amans, āmantīs,	loving, fond of.
Avidūs, ă, ūm,	desirous of, eager for.

¹ *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *volūptatis*, of *efficiens*; and *glōriae*, of *memor*.

Certāmēn, certāmīnīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>contest, strife, battle.</i>
Cūpidūs, ā, ūm,	<i>desirous of.</i>
Fons, fontīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>fountain.</i>
Laus, laudīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>praise.</i>
Nōvitās, nōvitātīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>novelty.</i>
Pēritūs, ā, ūm,	<i>skilled in.</i>
Fiscīs, pīcīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>fish.</i>
Plēnūs, ā, ūm,	<i>full.</i>
Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avīdi *gloriae*¹ fuērunt.
2. Homīnes *novitātis* avīdi sumt.
3. Numa *pacis*¹ erat amantissīmus.²
4. *Patrīae* amantissīmi sumus.
5. Consul *gloriae* cupīdus erat.
6. Cicēro glōriae cupidissīmus² fuit.
7. Milites erant avidissīmi certamīnis.
8. Fons piscīum plenissīmus est.
9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissīmi fuērunt.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of *praise*.
2. Are you not fond of *praise*?
3. We are fond of *praise*.
4. Were not the Athenians fond of pleasure?
5. They were always fond of pleasure.
6. They are desirous of glory.
7. Are you not desirous of a victory?
8. We are desirous of a victory.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from, by, in, with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

¹ Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

² See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means¹ are denoted by the Ablative :

Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. Glōriā dūeītur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duōbus mōdis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, *The sun illuminates all things with its light.* Cic. Apri dentibus se tūtantur, *Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. Aeger ērat vulnēribus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which,* any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*,—*mōre, ordīne, rātiōne*, etc.,—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *With the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persārum, *In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *To hear in silence.* Liv. Id ordīne fācēre, *To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

¹ It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause*, *Manner*, and *Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *ūtilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness; *gloriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause; *mōdis*, manner; *lūce*, means; *dentibus*, means; *vulnēribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

*Occīsus est a Thēbānis, He was slain by the Thebans.*¹ Nep.

EXERCISE LXI.

I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n.</i>	reward, gift.
Nātūrā, ae, <i>f.</i>	nature.
Pellīs, pellis, <i>f.</i>	skin, hide.
Quōtidiānūs, ā, ūm,	daily.
Scythaē, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i>	Scythians.
Triumphō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	to triumph.
Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	use.
Vestiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm,	to clothe.

II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*² laudātus est. 2. Urbs *naturā*³ mūnīta erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*³ delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli virtūte est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā⁴ triumphāvit.⁵ 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestībant.

¹ By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the *person by whom* any thing is done from the *means by which* it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

² Ablativē of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

³ Ablative of Means.

⁴ Ablative of Manner.

⁵ The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?¹
2. The fields are adorned *with beautiful flowers*.
3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*?
4. I have strengthened my memory *by daily use*.
5. You will be praised for (*because of*) your diligence.²
6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence.
7. The general saved the city by his valor.
8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilis virtute;³ *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cie.
Quid est melius bonitate,³ *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM⁴ are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimat, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi⁵ terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

¹ Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

² Ablative of Cause.

³ *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilis*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

⁴ *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are^{*} mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

⁵ *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after* *quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

EXERCISE LXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Argentūm, ī, n.	<i>silver.</i>
Avāritiā ae, f.	<i>avarice.</i>
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	<i>goodness, excellence.</i>
Elōquens, elōquentis,	<i>eloquent.</i>
Ferrūm, ī, n.	<i>iron.</i>
Foedūs, ā, ūm,	<i>detestable.</i>
Prētiōsūs, ū, ūm,	<i>valuable.</i>
Quām, conj.	<i>than.</i>
Scientiā, ae, f.	<i>knowledge.</i>
Turrīs, turrīs, f.	<i>tower.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Virtus mihi ¹ gloriā ² est carior. 2. Patria mihi vitā ² meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius amicitiā? 4. Quid foedius est avaritiā? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpōre est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.³ 8. Quid multitudīni ¹ gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.⁴ 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Silver is more valuable than iron.² 2. Virtue is more valuable than gold. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than money. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than ⁵ knowledge. 7. Good-

¹ See Rule XIV, 391.

² Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

³ In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

⁴ Subject of *es* understood.

⁵ In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, I.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

- I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:
- II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive:

I. Hannibal in Italiā¹ fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nos-tris castris, *In our camps.* Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way.* Cie. Ab urbe prōfīciscitur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Afričā, *From Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis² fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cie. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon.* Cie. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cie. Rōmae² fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cie.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Α, ἀb, prep. with abl.

from, by.

Bābylōn, Bābylōniš, f.

Babylon, the city of.

¹ *In Italiā*, *in castris*, and *in viā* designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while *ab urbe* and *ex Afričā* designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

² *Athēnis*, *Babylōne*, and *Corintho*, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while *Rōmae*, also the name of a town, is in the Genitive, as it is in the Singular of the First declension.

Cōrinthūs, ī, f.	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Diōnysiūs, ii, m.	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to dwell, reside.</i>
Hortūs, ī, m.	<i>garden.</i>
Laetitiā, ae, f.	<i>joy.</i>
Lūcūs, ī, m.	<i>grove.</i>
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, f.	<i>region, territory.</i>
Sēnātōr, sēnātōris, m.	<i>senator.</i>
Trīgintā,	<i>thirty.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Hannibāl *in Hispaniā*¹ fuit. 2. Latīnus *in Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latīnus in illis regionibus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe² fugiēbant. 5. Themistōles e Gracciā fugit. 6. Sex menses³ Athēnis⁴ fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistōles Athēnis fugit. 10. Athēnis habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*⁵ regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Is not your father *in Italy*? 2. My father is *in Greece*. 3. Were you not in Greece? 4. We resided in Greece three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years *at Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter *at Rome*? 13. I received your letter at Corinth.

¹ Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

² Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

³ See Rule VIII.

⁴ In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

⁵ In the Genitive, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ab, lative:

Octōgēsimo anno¹ est mortuus, He died in his eightieth year. Cie.
Vēre convēnēre, They assembled in the spring. Liv. *Nātāli die suo,*
On his birth-day. Nep. *Hiēme et aestāte, In winter and summer.* Cie.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, ī, m.	<i>Brutus</i> , a Roman patriot.
Dēflāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Diānā, ac, f.	<i>Diana</i> , a goddess.
Ephēsiūs, ā, īm,	<i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>
Hiems, hiēmīs, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālis, č,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālis diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	<i>Pompey</i> , Roman general.
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, tempōrīs, n.	<i>time.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Natāli *die²* tuo scripsisti epistōlam. 2. Eōdem *die* epistōlam tuam accēpi.³ 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

¹ *Anno, vere, die, hiēme, and aestāte* are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

² Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

³ From *accipio*.

cepit. 4. Eōdem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were you not in Athens¹ at that time?
2. We were at Corinth² at that time.
3. Do you not reside in the city¹ in winter?
4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter.
5. The city was taken at sunset.
6. Were you not in the city at that hour?
7. I was in the city at that time.
8. Were you not in Rome² on your birth-day?
9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad amīcum³ scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cie. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house.* Liv. In Italiā, *In Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp.*

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, eis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods.* Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cūn,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sīne,	tēnus :

¹ Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

² Genitive of Place. See Rule XXVI. II.

³ The Accusative *amīcum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cie. Hannibal in Itāliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (whither?) *into Asia*; In Itāliā, (where?) *in Italy*.

EXERCISE LXV.

I. Vocabulary.

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
Dīmīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
Prospērē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
Prōvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to challenge.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proclium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, pros pēre pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Verītas per se¹ mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudab illis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*² superāti sunt. 7. Cicēro de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

¹ *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render *in itself* or *of itself*.

² *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case*, *number*, *mood*, *tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensarum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case*, *number*, *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *io* showing that the subject is *ego*; *audītis*, you hear, the ending *itīs* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *robis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mens*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *am*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amar*, Verb stem *am*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. *Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.*

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistōcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general : THEMISTOCLES.

2) That *libero*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means *to liberate* : LIBERATED.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander* : THE COMMANDER.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country : GREECE.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all* : ALL.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitus* means *servitude* : FROM SERVITUDE.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*¹ it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.² In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect³ it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.⁴
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.⁵

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

¹ It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

² These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

³ Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

⁴ That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

⁵ For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 24, 33, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.

A.

A, ab, prep. with abl. *From, by.*

Aceipio, aceipere, acceptum. *To receive.*

Acér, aceris, acer. *Sharp, severe, valiant.*

Aciēs, acie, f. *Order of battle, battle-array, army.*

Ad, prep. with acc. *To, towards, near.*

Admīnistrō, arē, avī, atūm. *To administer, manage.*

Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnītūm. *To admonish.*

Adventūs, us, m. *Arrival, approach.*

Adversūs, prep. with acc. *Against.*

Aedificō, arē, avī, atūm. *To build.*

Aestās, aestatīs, f. *Summer.*

Agér, agri, m. *Field, land.*

Aggér, aggérīs, m. *Mound, rampart.*

Agīs, Agidīs, m. *Agis, a king of Sparta.*

Albānūs, ā, ūm. *Alban.*

Alexandré, Alexandri, m. *Alexander, the Great.*

Alíquīs, alíquā, alíquid or alíquod. *Some, some one.* See 191.

Altūs, ā, ūm. *High, lofty.*

Amans, amantīs. *Loving, fond of.*

Ambūlō, arē, avī, atūm. *To walk.*

Amicītiā, ac, f. *Friendship.*

Amicūs, ā, ūm. *Friendly.*

Amicūs, ī, m. *Friend.*

Amnīs, amnīs, m. *River.*

Amō, arē, avī, atūm. *To love.*

Amōr, amōris, m. *Love.*

Ampliō, arē, avī, atūm. *To enlarge.*

Anēs, ī, m. *Aeneus, a Roman king.*

Animāl, animālis, n. *Animal.*

Animūs, ī, m. *Soul, mind, passion, disposition.*

Annūlūs, ī, m. *Ring.*

Annūs, ī, m. *Year.*

Antē, prep. with acc. *Before.*

Antiquūs, ā, ūm. *Ancient.*

Apīs, apīs, f. *Bee.*

Appellō, arē, avī, atūm. *To call.*

Appētens, appētentīs. *Desiring, striving for.*

Apūd, prep. with acc. *In the presence of, near, before, among.*

Apūliā, ae, f. *Apulia, a country in Italy.*

Arabs, Arabīs, m and f. *Arab, an Arab.*

Arctē, adv. *Closely, soundly.*

Argentūm, ī, n. *Silver.*

Arō, ararē, aravī, aratūm. *To plough.*

Arrōgantiā, ae, f. *Arrogance.*

Ars, artis, f. *Art, skill.*

Artāxerxēs, īs, m. *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*

Arx, arcis, f. *Citadel, fortress.*

Athēnae, ārūm, f. plur. *Athens, the capital of Attica.*

Athēniensīs, ē. *Athenian.*

Athēniensīs, īs, m. and f. *Athenian, an Athenian.*

Atticūs, ī, m. *Atticus, a Roman name.*

Audiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. *To hear.*

Audītōr, audītōris, m. *Hearer, auditor.*

Aureūs, ā, ūm. *Golden.*

Aurūm, ī, n. *Gold.*

Avāritiā, ae, f. *Avarice.*

Avīdūs, ā, ūm. *Desirous of, eager for.*

Avīs, āvīs, f. *Bird.*

B.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnīs, f. *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Syrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*

Beātūs, ā, ūm. *Happy, blessed.*

Bellūm, ī, n. *War, warfare.*

Bēnē, adv. *Well.*

Bēnignē, adv. *Kindly.*

Bōnītās, bōnītātīs, f. *Goodness, excellence.*

Bōnīs, ā, ūm. *Good.*

Brēvīs, ē. *Short, brief.*

Brūtūs, ī, m. *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

C.

Caesār, Caesāris, m. *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*

Caiūs, ii, m. *Caius, a proper name.*

Camillūs, ī, m. *Camillus, a Roman general.*

Campūs, ī, m. *Plain.*

Cānīs, cānīs, m. and f. *Dog.*

Cantō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To sing.*

Cantūs, ūs, m. *Singing, song.*

Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm. *To take, capture.*

Cāpūt, cāpītīs, n. *Head, capital.*

Carmēn, carmīnīs, n. *Song, poem, verse.*

Carthāgīniensīs, ē. *Carthaginian.*

Carthāgīniensīs, īs, m. and f. *A Carthaginian.*

Carthāgō, Carthāgīnīs, f. *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*

Carthāgō Nōvā. *New Carthage, Carthagena, a city of Spain.*

Cārūs, ā, ūm. *Dear.*

Cātō, Cātōnīs, m. *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*

Centūm. *One hundred. See 175, 2.*

Certāmēn, certāmīnīs, n. *Contest, strife, battle.*

Cibūs, ī, m. *Food.*

Cicērō, Cicērōnīs, m. *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*

Civīlīs, ē. *Civil.*

Civīs, civīs, m. and f. *Citizen.*

Civītās, cīvītātīs, f. *State, city.*

Clārūs, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*

Classīs, classīs, f. *Fleet, navy.*

Coerceō, coercērē, coerētī, coerētūm. *To check.*

Cōlō, cōlōrē, cōlūī, cultūm. *To practise, cultivate.*

Commūnīs ē. *Common.*

Condemnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To condemn.*

Condītōr, condītōris, m. *Founder.*

Conjux, conjūgīs, m. and f. *Wife, husband, spouse.*

Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Conon</i> , an Athenian general.	Dēmosthēnēs, ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>Demosthenes</i> , the celebrated Athenian orator.	
Conscientiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Consciousness</i> .	Dīānā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Diana</i> , the goddess of the chase.	
Consiliūm, ii, <i>n.</i> <i>Design, plan</i> .	Dīcō, dīcērē, dīxī, dīctūm. <i>To say, speak, tell.</i>	
Conspēctūs, ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>Sight, view, presence.</i>	Dīēs, dīēi, <i>m.</i> <i>Day</i> . See 119, note.	
Consūl, consūlīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Consul</i> .	Dīlīgens, dīlīgentīs. <i>Diligent</i> .	
Contrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i> <i>Against, opposite to, contrary to.</i>	Dīlīgentiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Diligence</i> .	
Convōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To assemble, call together.</i>	Dīmīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To fight.</i>	
Cōrinthiās, ī, <i>f.</i> <i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.	Dīoñysīus, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.	
Cōrnēliūs, ii, <i>m.</i> <i>Cornelius</i> , a Roman name.	Dīscīpūlūs, ī, <i>m.</i> <i>Pupil</i> .	
Cōrōnā, ac, <i>f.</i> <i>Crown</i> .	Dīsertē, <i>adv.</i> <i>Clearly, eloquently.</i>	
Corpūs, corpōrīs, <i>n.</i> <i>Body, person.</i>	Dīplīcēō, dīplīcērē, dīplīcūi, dīplīcītūm. <i>To displease.</i>	
Creō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To create, make, appoint, elect.</i>	Dīvīnūs, ā, ūm. <i>Divine</i> .	
Crūdēlīs, ē. <i>Cruel.</i>	Dōlōr, dōlōrīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Pain, grief, suffering.</i>	
Crūdūs, ā, ūm. <i>Unripe.</i>	Dōnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To give, present.</i>	
Culpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To blame.</i>	Dōnūm, ī, <i>n.</i> <i>Gift.</i>	
Cum, <i>prep. with abl.</i> <i>With.</i>	Dormīē, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To sleep.</i>	
Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm. <i>Desirous of.</i>	Drācō, Drācōnīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Draco</i> , an Athenian lawgiver.	
Cūrēs, Cūriūm, <i>m. plur.</i> <i>Cures, a Sabine town.</i>	Dūcentī, ae, ā. <i>Two hundred.</i>	
Custōdiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To guard.</i>	Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, dūctūm. <i>To lead.</i>	
Custōs, custōdīs, <i>m. and f.</i> <i>Keeper, guard.</i>	Dūleis, ē. <i>Sweet, pleasant.</i>	
<i>D.</i>		
Dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i> <i>Concerning.</i>	Dūō, ae, ū. <i>Two.</i> See 176.	
Dēbēō, dēbērē, dēbūi, dēbītūm. <i>To owe.</i>	Dūplīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To double, increase.</i>	
Dēcēm. <i>Ten.</i> See 175.	Dux, dūcīs, <i>m. and f.</i> <i>Leader, general.</i>	
Dēcēmūs, ā, am. <i>Tenth.</i>	<i>E.</i>	
Dēfectiō, dēfēctiōnīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Eclipse.</i>	E, ex, <i>prep. with abl.</i> <i>From.</i>	
Dēflāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To burn, be consumed.</i>	Ebrītūs, ēbrītātīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Drunkenness.</i>	
Dēlectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To delight, please.</i>	Edūcō, ēdūcērē, ēduxī, ēductūm. <i>To lead forth, lead out.</i>	
Dēmārātūs, ī, <i>m.</i> <i>Demaratus</i> , a Corinthian.	Eflūgiō, effūgērē, eflūgi, effūgitūm. <i>To escape.</i>	
<i>I.</i> See 184.		

Egrēgius, ā, ūm. <i>Distinguished.</i>	Fons, fontis, m. <i>Fountain.</i>	
Egrēgiē, adv. <i>Excellently.</i>	Fortis, č. <i>Brave.</i>	
Elephantūs, ī, m. <i>Elephant.</i>	Fortitēr, adr. <i>Bravely.</i>	
Elōquens, elōquentis. <i>Eloquent.</i>	Fortitūdō, fortitūdīns, f. <i>Bravery, fortitude.</i>	
Elōquentiā, ae, f. <i>Eloquence.</i>	Fossā, ae, f. <i>Ditch, moat.</i>	
Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm. <i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>	Frātēr, frātrīs, m. <i>Brother.</i>	
Epirūs, ī, f. <i>Epirus, a country in Greece.</i>	Fruetūs, ūs, m. <i>Fruit, produce, income.</i>	
Epistōlā, ac, f. <i>Letter.</i>	Frūmentūm, ī, n. <i>Corn, grain.</i>	
Erūdiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To instruct, refine, educate.</i>	Fūgā, ae, f. <i>Flight.</i>	
Erūditūs, ā, ūm. <i>Learned, instructed in.</i>	Fūgiō, fugērē, fūgī, fūgitūm. <i>To flee, fly, run away.</i>	
Ex, prep. with abl. <i>From.</i>	Fūgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To rout, drive away.</i>	
Exerecō, exerceērē, exerēnī, exereītūm. <i>To exercise, train.</i>	Fūnestūs, ā, ūm. <i>Destructive.</i>	
Exercitūs, ūs, m. <i>Army.</i>	Fūrōr, fūrōrīs, m. <i>Madness, insanity.</i>	
Expugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To take, take by storm.</i>	<i>G.</i>	
Exspectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To await, expect.</i>	Gallūs, ī, m. <i>Gallus, a proper name.</i>	
Exsūl, exsūlis, m. and f. <i>Exile.</i>	Gallūs, ī, m. <i>Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.</i>	
<i>F.</i>		
Faciēs, faciēi, f. <i>Face, appearance.</i>	Gemmā, ae, f. <i>Gem.</i>	
Ferrūm, ī, n. <i>Iron.</i>	Gēnēr, gēnērī, m. <i>Son-in-law.</i>	
Fertilis, č. <i>Fertile.</i>	Gens, gentīs, f. <i>Race.</i>	
Fidēlitās, fidēlitātīs, f. <i>Fidelity, faithfulness.</i>	Germāniā, ae, f. <i>Germany.</i>	
Fidēs, fidēi, f. <i>Faith, fidelity.</i>	Glādiūs, ii, m. <i>Sword.</i>	
Fidūs, ā, ūm. <i>Faithful.</i>	Glōbōsūs, ā, ūm. <i>Spherical.</i>	
Filiā, ae, f. <i>Daughter.</i>	Glōriā, ae, f. <i>Glory.</i>	
Filiūs, ii, m. <i>Son.</i>	Græciā, ae, f. <i>Greece.</i>	
Finīō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To finish, bring to a close.</i>	Græcūs, ā, ūm. <i>Grecian, Greek.</i>	
Finīs, finīs, m. <i>Limit, territory.</i>	Græcūs, ī, m. <i>Greek, a Greek.</i>	
Firmē, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To strengthen, confirm.</i>	Grātiā, ae, f. <i>Favor, gratitude, thanks.</i>	
Flamīniūs, ii, m. <i>Flaminius, a Roman general.</i>	Grātūs, ā, ūm. <i>Acceptable, pleasing.</i>	
Flōs, flōrīs, m. <i>Flower.</i>	Grex, grēgīs, m. <i>Herd, flock.</i>	
Foedūs, ā, ūm. <i>Detestable.</i>	<i>H.</i>	
	Häbeō, häbērē, häbuī, häbitūm. <i>To have, hold.</i>	
	Häbitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To dwell, reside.</i>	

Hannibāl, Hannibális, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hannibal</i> , a celebrated Carthaginian general.	Innócentis, innocentis. <i>Innocent.</i>
Hannō, Hannōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno</i> , a Carthaginian general.	Insāniā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Insanity.</i>
Hastā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Spear.</i>	Insulā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Island.</i>
Hic, hæc, hōc.	<i>This.</i>	Intēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i> <i>Between,</i>
Hiemis, hiemis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Winter.</i>	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Hirundō, hirundinis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Swallow.</i>	Intrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To enter.</i>
Hispāniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Spain.</i>	Inventōr, inventoris, <i>m.</i> <i>Inventor.</i>
Hispānūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>A Spaniard.</i>	Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To invite.</i>
Hómērūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Homer</i> , the celebrated Grecian poet.	Ipsō, ipsā, ipsūm. <i>Self, he, himself.</i>
Hómē, hómīnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Man.</i>	See 186.
Hónōr, hónoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Honor.</i>	Is, ēā, īl. <i>That, he, she, it.</i>
Hōrā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Hour.</i>	Istē, istā, istūd. <i>That, such.</i> See 186.
Hostis, hostis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	<i>Enemy.</i>	Italiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Italy.</i>
<i>I.</i>		
Idēm, eādēm, īdēm.	<i>Same, the same.</i> See 186.	J.
Ignōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.	<i>To be ignorant of, not to know.</i>	Jaciō, jācērē, jēcī, jactum. <i>To cast, throw, hurl.</i>
Illē, illā, illād.	<i>That, he, she, it.</i> See 186.	Jām, <i>adv.</i> <i>Now, already.</i>
Illustrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.	<i>To illustrate, illumine.</i>	Jūeundās, ā, īm. <i>Delightful, pleasant.</i>
Imāgō, imāgīnīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>Image, picture.</i>	Jūdex, jūdicīs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>Judge.</i>
Impatiens, impatiens. <i>Impatient.</i>		Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctum. <i>To join.</i>
Impératōr, impératōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Commander.</i>	Justitiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Justice.</i>
Impériūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>Reign, power, government.</i>	Justūs, ā, īm. <i>Upright, just.</i>
Impétūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Attack.</i>	Juvēnīs, juvēnīs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>A youth, young man.</i>
Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>Wickedness.</i>	Juvētās, juvētūtīs, <i>f.</i> <i>Youth, a youth, a young person.</i>
In, <i>prep. with acc. and abl.</i>	<i>Into, in, within.</i>	L.
Incertūs, ā, īm.	<i>Uncertain.</i>	Lābōr, lābōris, <i>m.</i> <i>Labor.</i>
Indicō, indicērē, indīkī, indictūm.	<i>To declare.</i>	Lābōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To strive for, labor, work.</i>
Infestō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.	<i>To infest.</i>	Lācēdaemōniūs, ī, <i>m.</i> <i>Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.</i>
Ingens, ingentīs.	<i>Huge, large, great.</i>	Laetitiā, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Joy.</i>
		Lāpīs, lāpīdīs, <i>m.</i> <i>Stone.</i>
		Lātīnē, <i>adv.</i> <i>In Latin.</i>
		Lātīnūs, ī, <i>m.</i> <i>Latinus, a Latin king.</i>
		Lātūs, ā, īm. <i>Broad.</i>

Laudābilis, ē. <i>Praiseworthy, laudable.</i>	Mensā, ae, f. <i>Table.</i>
Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To praise.</i>	Mensis, mensis, m. <i>Month.</i>
Laus, laudis, f. <i>Praise.</i>	Mercēs, mercēdis, f. <i>Reward.</i>
Lāvīniā, ae, f. <i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>	Mērcō, mērērē, mēruī, mēritūm. <i>To deserve, merit.</i>
Lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, f. <i>Embassy.</i>	Meūs, ā, ūm. <i>My.</i> See 185.
Lēgatūs, ī, m. <i>Ambassador.</i>	Milēs, milētis, m. <i>Soldier.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, f. <i>Legion, a body of soldiers.</i>	Miltiādēs, īs, m. <i>Miltiades, an Athenian general.</i>
Lēgō, lēgērē, Ēgī, lectām. <i>To choose, appoint.</i>	Mōdestiā, ae, f. <i>Modesty.</i>
Leō, leōnīs, m. <i>Lion.</i>	Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnētūm. <i>To advise.</i>
Lētālīs, ē. <i>Mortal, deadly.</i>	Mons, monūs, m. <i>Mountain.</i>
Lex, lēgis, f. <i>Law.</i>	Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To show, point out.</i>
Libēr, librī, m. <i>Book.</i>	Mōrā, ae, f. <i>Delay.</i>
Libērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To liberate.</i>	Mors, mortis, f. <i>Death.</i>
Libertās, libertātis, f. <i>Liberty.</i>	Multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. <i>Magnitude.</i>
Longūs, ā, ūm. <i>Long.</i>	Multūs, ā, ūm. <i>Much, many.</i>
Lācūs, ī, m. <i>Grove.</i>	Mundūs, ī, m. <i>World, universe.</i>
Lānā, ae, f. <i>Moon.</i>	Mūniō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To fortify, defend.</i>
Laseīniā, ae, f. <i>Nightingale.</i>	Mūnūs, mūnērīs, n. <i>Gift, present.</i>
Lux, lūcīs, f. <i>Light.</i>	Mūrūs, ī, m. <i>Wall.</i>
Luxūriā, ae, f. <i>Luxury.</i>	Mūtatiō, mūtatiōnis, f. <i>Change, phase.</i>
Lycurgūs, ī, m. <i>Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.</i>	
Lysandēr, Lysandrī, m. <i>Lysander, a Spartan general.</i>	
<i>M.</i>	
Mācēdoniā, ae, f. <i>Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.</i>	Nātālīs, ē. <i>Belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Māgistrē, māgistrī, m. <i>Master, teacher.</i>	Nātālīs diēs. <i>Birth-day.</i>
Magnōpērē, adv. <i>Greatly.</i>	Nātūrā, ae, f. <i>Nature.</i>
Magnūs, ā, ūm. <i>Great, large.</i>	Nāvālīs, ē. <i>Naval.</i>
Mālūm, ī, n. <i>Evil.</i>	Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To sail to.</i>
Mareellūs, ī, m. <i>Marellus, a celebrated Roman general.</i>	Nāvīs, nāvīs, f. <i>Ship.</i>
Mārē, mārīs, n. <i>Sea.</i>	Nēcessāriūs, ā, ūm. <i>Necessary.</i>
Mātēr, mātrīs, f. <i>Mother.</i>	Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, f. <i>Necessity.</i>
Mātūrūs, ā, ūm. <i>Ripe.</i>	Nēpōs, nēpōtīs, m. <i>Grandson.</i>
Mēmōriā, ae, f. <i>Memory.</i>	Nōbīlīs, ē. <i>Noble.</i>
	Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, n. <i>Name.</i>
	Nōmēnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To call, name.</i>

N.

Nātālīs, ē. <i>Belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālīs diēs. <i>Birth-day.</i>
Nātūrā, ae, f. <i>Nature.</i>
Nāvālīs, ē. <i>Naval.</i>
Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To sail to.</i>
Nāvīs, nāvīs, f. <i>Ship.</i>
Nēcessāriūs, ā, ūm. <i>Necessary.</i>
Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, f. <i>Necessity.</i>
Nēpōs, nēpōtīs, m. <i>Grandson.</i>
Nōbīlīs, ē. <i>Noble.</i>
Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, n. <i>Name.</i>
Nōmēnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To call, name.</i>

Nōn, *adv.* Not.

Nōnnē, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, Yes. See 346, II., 2.

Nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm. Our, our own, ours.

Nōvītās, nōvītātīs, *f.* Novelty.

Nōvūs, ā, ūm. New.

Nox, noctīs, *f.* Night.

Nūbēs, nūbīs, *f.* Cloud.

Nūm, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, No. See 346, II., 1.

Nūmā, ae, *m.* Numa, a Roman king.

Nūmērūs, ī, *m.* Number, quantity.

Nummūs, ī, *m.* Money, a piece of money, a coin.

Nuntiō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To proclaim, announce.

O.

Obsēs, obsdīs, *m. and f.* Hostage.

Occāsūs, ūs, *m.* Setting, going down.

Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To occupy, take possession of.

Octāvūs, ā, ūm. Eighth.

Octō. Eight. See 175, 2.

Octōgintā. Eighty. See 175, 2.

Ocūlūs, ī, *m.* Eye.

Odiōsūs, ā, ūm. Odious, hateful.

Omnīs, ē. All, every, whole.

Oppidūm, ī, *n.* Town, city.

Oppugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To besiege, take by storm.

Optō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To wish for, desire.

Opūlentūs, ā, ūm. Rich, opulent.

Opūs, opērīs, *n.* Work.

Orātiō, orātiōnīs, *f.* Oration, speech.

Orātōr, orātōrīs, *m.* Orator.

Orbīs, orbīs, *m.* Circle.

Orbīs terrārūm. The world.

Ornō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To adorn, be an ornament to.

Ovīs, ūvīs, *f.* Sheep.

P.

Pārcens, pārentīs, *m. and f.* Parent.

Pāreō, pārērē, pāruī, pārītūm. To obey.

Pars, partīs, *f.* Part, portion.

Parvūs, ā, ūm. Small.

Passēr, passērīs, *m.* Sparrow.

Pastōr, pastōrīs, *m.* Shepherd.

Pātēr, pātrīs, *m.* Father.

Pātriā, ae, *f.* Native country, country.

Paulūs, ī, *m.* Paulus, a Roman consul.

Pax, pācīs, *f.* Peace.

Pēcūniā, ae, *f.* Money.

Pellīs, pellīs, *f.* Skin, hide.

Pēr, prep. with acc. Of, through.

Pērāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To wander through.

Pērītūs, ā, ūm. Skilled in.

Persā, ac, *m.* A Persian.

Pēs, pēdīs, *m.* Foot.

Philippūs, ī, *m.* Philip, king of Macedon.

Philōsōphiā, ae, *f.* Philosophy.

Philōsōphūs, ī, *m.* Philosopher.

Piētās, piētātīs, *f.* Filial affection, piety, duty.

Pirātā, ac, *m.* Pirate.

Piscīs, piscīs, *m.* Fish.

Pisistratūs, ī, *m.* Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.

Plāecō, plācērē, plācuī, plācētūm. To please.

Plēnūs, ā, ūm. Full.

Poenūs, ā, ūm. Carthaginian.

Poenus, ī, *m.* A Carthaginian.

Pōmūm, ī, *n.* Fruit.

Potapiliūs, ii, *m.* Pompilius, a Roman name.

Pompēiūs, ii, *m.* Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.

Pondūs, pondērīs, *n.* Weight, mass.

Portūs, ūs, m. *Port, harbor.*

Post, prep. with acr. *After.*

Pōtēns, pōtentīs. *Powerful, able.*

Praebeō, praebēr̄, praebūi, praebī-
tūm. *To show, furnish, give.*

Praeceptōr, praecēptōrīs, m. *Teacher,
instructor.*

Praeceptūm, ī, n. *Rule, precept.*

Praeclārūs, ā, ūm. *Renowned, dis-
tinguished.*

Praedīcō, praedīcēr̄, praedixī, praedictūm. *To predict, foretell.*

Praemiūm, ii, n. *Reward.*

Prātūm, ī, n. *Meadow.*

Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm. *Valuable.*

Prīmūs, ā, ūm. *First.*

Prīncipiūm, ii, n. *Beginning.*

Prō, prep. with abl. *In behalf of,
for.*

Procliūm, ii, n. *Battle.*

Prospērē, adv. *Successfully.*

Prōvōcō, ār̄, āvī, ātūm. *To chal-
lenge.*

Prūdentiā, ae, f. *Prudence.*

Publiūs, ii, m. *Publius, a Roman
name.*

Puellā, ae, f. *Girl.*

Puēr, puērī, m. *Boy.*

Pugnā, ae, f. *Battle.*

Pugnō, ār̄, āvī, ātūm. *To fight.*

Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beauti-
ful.*

Pūnicūs, ā, ūm. *Carthaginian,
Punic.*

Pyrrhūs, ī, m. *Pyrrhus, a king of
Epirus.*

Q.

Quām, conj. *Than.*

Quartūs, ā, ūm. *Fourth.*

Quattuōr. *Four.* See 175, 2.

Quī, quac, quōd, rel. pronoun. *Who,
which, what.* See 187.

Quinquāgintā. *Fifty.* See 175, 2.

Quinquē. *Five.* See 175, 2.

Quintūs, ā, ūm. *Fifth.*

Quīs, quac, quōd? *interrog. pronoun.
Who, which, what?* See 188.

Quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs, or quidvīs,
indef. pronoun. *Whoever, whatever.
See 191.*

Quōtīdiānūs, ā, ūm. *Daily.*

Quōtīdiē, adv. *Daily.*

R.

Rāmūs, ī, m. *Branch.*

Rātiō, rātiōnīs, f. *Reason.*

Rectē, adv. *Rightly.*

Rectūm, ī, n. *Right, rectitude.*

Rēdūcē, rēdūcēr̄, rēduxī, rēduetūm.
To lead back.

Rēgīnā, ae, f. *Queen.*

Rēgiō, rēgiōnīs, f. *Region, terri-
tory.*

Rēgūlūs, ī, m. *Regulus, a Roman
general.*

Regnō, ār̄, āvī, ātūm. *To reign.*

Regnūm, ī, n. *Kingdom, royal author-
ity.*

Rēgō, rēgēr̄, rexī, rectūm. *To
rule.*

Rēnōvō, ār̄, āvī, ātūm. *To renew.*

Rēs, reī, f. *Thing, affair.*

Rēs pūblicā. *Republic.*

Rēvōcō, ār̄, āvī, ātūm. *To recall.*

Rex, rēgīs, m. *King.*

Rhēnūs, ī, m. *Rhine.*

Rōmā, ae, f. *Rome.*

Rōmānūs, ā, ūm. *Roman.*

Rōmānūs, ī, m. *Roman, a Roman.*

Rōmūlūs, ī, m. *Romulus, the found-
er of Rome.*

S.

Sāguntūm, ī, n. *Saguntum, a town
in Spain.*

Sálūs, sálutis, f. <i>Safety.</i>	Sólōn, Sólónis, m. <i>Solon</i> , an Athenian legislator.
Sálutāris, ē. <i>Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.</i>	Sólum, ī, n. <i>Soil.</i>
Sálutō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To salute.</i>	Spartā, ae, j. <i>Sparta</i> , capital of Laconia.
Sanctūs, ā, ūm. <i>Holy, sacred.</i>	Spēciēs, spēciēi, f. <i>Appearance.</i>
Sápiens, sápientis. <i>Wise.</i>	Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To hope.</i>
Sápientēr, adv. <i>Wisely.</i>	Spēs, spēi, f. <i>Hope.</i>
Sápientiā, ae, f. <i>Wisdom.</i>	Spōliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To rob, spoil, despoil.</i>
Schōlā, ae, f. <i>School.</i>	Stímūlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To stimulate.</i>
Scientiā, ae, f. <i>Knowledge.</i>	Stultitiā, ae, j. <i>Folly.</i>
Seípiō, Seípiōnis, m. <i>Scipio</i> , a distinguished Roman.	Sūi, sībī. <i>Himself, herself, itself.</i> See 184.
Seribō, scribērē, seripsī, scriptūm. <i>To write.</i>	Sūm, essē, fuī. <i>To be.</i> See 204.
Scythaē, ārūm, m. plur. <i>The Scythians.</i>	Súpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To conquer.</i>
Sécundūs, ā, ūm. <i>Second, favorable.</i>	Suppliciūm, īi, n. <i>Punishment.</i>
Sempēr, adv. <i>Always, ever.</i>	Suūs, ā, ūm. <i>His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.</i>
Sénatōr, sénatōris, m. <i>Senator.</i>	Sýracūsae, ārūm, f. plur. <i>Syracuse</i> , a city of Sicily.
Sénatūs, ūs, m. <i>Senate.</i>	T.
Senectūs, seneetūtis, f. <i>Old age.</i>	Táceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācítūm. <i>To be silent.</i>
Sensūs, ūs, m. <i>Feeling, perception, sense.</i>	Tárentūm, ī, n. <i>Tarentum</i> , an Italian town.
Sententiā, ae, f. <i>Opinion.</i>	Tarquiniūs, īi, m. <i>Tarquin</i> , a Roman king.
Sermō, sermōniś, m. <i>Discourse, conversation.</i>	Télūm, ī, n. <i>Javelin, weapon.</i>
Serviō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. <i>To serve.</i>	Témēritās, témēritatīs, f. <i>Rashness.</i>
Serviūs, īi, m. <i>Servius</i> , a Roman proper name.	Templūm, ī, n. <i>Temple.</i>
Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. <i>To preserve, keep, save.</i>	Tempūs, tempōrīs, n. <i>Time.</i>
Serviūs, īi, m. <i>Slave.</i>	Terrā, ae, j. <i>Land, earth.</i>
Sex. <i>Six.</i> See 175, 2.	Terreō, terrērē, terruī, territiūm. <i>To frighten, terrify.</i>
Siciliā, ae, j. <i>Sicily.</i>	Tertiūs, ā, ūm. <i>Third.</i>
Silentium, īi, n. <i>Silence.</i>	Thalēs, īs, m. <i>Thales</i> , a Grecian philosopher.
Similīs, ē. <i>Like.</i>	Thēbānūs, ā, ūm. <i>Theban, belonging to Thebes</i> (a city in Greece).
Singūlāris, ē. <i>Remarkable, singular.</i>	
Sōcēr, sōcērī, m. <i>Father-in-law.</i>	
Sōciūs, īi, m. <i>Ally, associate.</i>	
Sōcratēs, īs, m. <i>Socrates</i> , the celebrated Athenian philosopher.	
Sōl, sōlis, m. <i>Sun.</i>	

Thēbānus, ī, m. *A Theban.*

Thēmistroclēs, īs, m. *Themistocles*, a celebrated Athenian.

Thrāsybūlūs, ī, m. *Thrasybulus*, the liberator of Athens.

Ticīnūs, ī, m. *Ticinus*, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.

Trēs, triā. *Three.* See 176.

Trīgintā. *Thirty.* See 175, 2.

Triumphō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To triumph.*

Trōjā, ae, f. *Troy*, ancient city in Asia Minor.

Tū, tuī. *Thou, you.* See 184.

Tulliā, ae, f. *Tullia*, a Roman proper name.

Tullūs, ī, m. *Tullus*, a Roman king.

Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*

Turrīs, turrīs, f. *Tower.*

Tuūs, ī, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*

Tyrannūs, ī, m. *Tyrant.*

Tyriūs, ī, ūm. *Tyrian.*

U.

Ulyssēs, īs, m. *Ulysses*, a Grecian king.

Unīversūs, ī, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*

Unūs, ī, ūm. *One.* See 176.

Urbs, urbīs, f. *City.*

Usūs, ūs, m. *Use.*

Utilīs, ē. *Useful.*

V.

Välētūdō, välētūdīnīs, f. *Health.*

Väriētās, väriētātīs, f. *Variety.*

Väriūs, ī, ūm. *Various.*

Varrō, varrōnīs, m. *Varro*, a Roman consul.

Vēr, vērīs, n. *Spring.*

Verbūm, ī, n. *Word.*

Vērēcundiā, ae, f. *Modesty.*

Vēritās, vēritātīs, f. *Truth, verity.*

Vērūs, ī, ūm. *True, real.*

Vērūm, ī, n. *Truth.*

Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*

Vestiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm. *To clothe.*

Viaā, ae, f. *Way, road.*

Victōr, victōrīs, m. *Victor, conqueror.*

Vietōriā, ae, f. *Victory.*

Victōriā, ae, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*

Vīgilō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*

Vilīs, ē. *Cheap.*

Vindex, vindīcīs, m. and f. *Vindicator, avenger.*

Viōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To violate.*

Vīr, vīrī, m. *Man, hero, soldier.*

Virgō, virgōnīs, f. *Maiden, girl.*

Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. *Valor, virtue.*

Vitā, ae, f. *Life.*

Vitiūm, īi, n. *Fault, vice.*

Vítüpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*

Vivō, vivērē, vixī, victūm. *To live, reside.*

Vōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To call.*

Vōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To fly.*

Völkuntāriūs, ī, ūm. *Voluntary.*

Völkuptās, völkuptātīs, f. *Pleasure.*

Vox, vōeīs, f. *Voice.*

Vulnērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To wound.*

Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*

Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. *Vulture.*

Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*

X.

Xerxēs, īs, m. *Xerxes*, a Persian king.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A, an. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.

Acceptable. *Grātūs, ū, ūm.*

Admonish. *Admōnō, admōnērē, admōnū, admōnītūm.*

Adorned. *Ornātūs, ū, ūm.*

Advise. *Mōniō, mōnērē, mōnnū, mōnītūm.*

After. *Post, prep. with acc.*

Against. *Contrā, prep. with acc.* Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

Alexander. *Alexandrē, Alexandrī, m.*

All. *Omnīs, ē.*

Always. *Sempēr, adv.*

Announce. *Nuntiō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Appoint. *Crērē, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Army. *Exercitūs, ūs, m.*

Arrival. *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

At. *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time.* See 421 and 426.

Athenian. *Athēnicūs, ē.*

Athenian, an Athenian. *Athēniensīs, ūs, m. and f.*

Athens. *Athēnae, ārūm, f. plur.*

Attack. *Impētūs, ūs, m.*

Await. *Exspectō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

B.

Battle. *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

Battle-array. *Aciēs, ēī, f.*

Be. *Sūm, essē, fui.*

Be silent. *Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tāctūm.*

Beautiful. *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*

Before. *Antē, prep. with acc.*

Bird. *Avīs, āvīs, f.*

Birth-day. *Nātalīs dīēs, m.*

Blame. *Vitūpērō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Book. *Lībēr, lībrī, m.*

Boy. *Puēr, puērī, m.*

Brave. *Fortīs, ē.*

Bravely. *Fortītēr, adv.*

Bravery. *Virtūs, virtūtīs, f.*

Bring to a close. *Finiō, īrē, īrī, īlūm.*

Brother. *Frāter, frātrīs, m.*

Brutus. *Brūtus, ī, m.*

By. *A, āb, prep. with abl.* Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

C.

Caius. *Cāiūs, ū, m.*

Call. *Vōcō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Camillus. *Cāmillūs, ī, m.*

Can, can have. See *may, may have.*

Carthage. *Carthāgō, Carthāgīnīs, f.*

Carthaginian. *Carthāgīnicūs, ē.*

Carthaginian, a Carthaginian. *Carthāgīniensīs, ūs, m. and f.*

Cato. *Cātō, Cātōnīs, m.*

Cicero. *Cicērō, Cīcērōnīs, m.*

Citizen. *Civis, civis*, m. and f.

City. *Urbs, urbis*, f.

Cloud. *Nubes, nubis*, f.

Commander. *Impetrator, impetratus*, m.

Concerning. *Dē*, prep. with abl.

Consul. *Consul, consulis*, m.

Contrary to. *Contrā*, prep. with aee.

Conversation. *Sermō, sermōnis*, m.

Corinth. *Cōrīnthius, ī*, f.

Corinthian. *Cōrīnθiūs, ā, ūm.*

Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrīnθiūs, ī, m.*

Cornelius. *Cōrnēliūs, ī*, m.

Could, could have. See *might, might have*.

Country. *Pātriā, ae*, f.

Courage. *Virtus, virtutis*, f.

Crown. *Cōrōnā, ae*, f.

D.

Daily. *Quotidiānūs, ā, ūm.*

Daughter. *Filiā, ae*, f.

Day. *Diēs, diēi*, m. See 119, note.

Dear. *Cārūs, ā, ūm.*

Declare. *Indicō, indicērē, indicitū*, *indictum*.

Delight. *Dēlectō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Desirous of. *Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm.; ārīdūs, ā, ūm.*

Did. Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.

Diligence. *Diligentiā, ae*, f.

Diligent. *Diligens, diligētis*.

Do. Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.

E.

Eight. *Octō*. See 175, 2.

Eighth. *Octāvūs, ā, ūm.*

Enemy. *Hostis, hostis*, m. and f.

Exercise. *Exerceō, exereērē, exercitū*, *exercitum*.

Exile. *Exsūl, exsūlis*, m. and f.

Expect. *Exspectō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

F.

Father. *Pātēr, pātrīs*, m.

Father-in-law. *Sōcēr, sōcēri*, m.

Fertile. *Fertiliā, ē*.

Fidelity. *Fidēs, fidēi*, f.

Field. *Agrē, āgrī*, m.

Fifth. *Quintūs, ā, ūm.*

Fifty. *Quinquāgūndā*. See 175, 2.

Fight. *Pugnō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Finish. *Finīō, īrē, īrī, ītūm.*

Five. *Quinque*. See 175, 2.

Flee. *Fūgiō, fūgerē, fūjī, fūgitūm.*

Flower. *Flōs, flōris*, m.

Fly. *Vōlō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Foot. *Pēs, pēdis*, m.

Fond of. *Amans, āmantīs*.

For. *Prō*, prep. with abl. In the sense of because of, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of for the benefit of, by the Dative (384).

Fortify. *Mūniō, īrē, īrī, ītūm.*

Four. *Quattuōr*. See 175, 2.

Fourth. *Quartūs, ā, ūm.*

Friend. *Amīcūs, ī*, m.

Friendship. *Amīcītiā, ae*, f.

From. *A, āb*, prep. with abl.

Fruit. *Fructūs, ūs*, m.

G.

Garden. *Hortūs, ī*, m.

Gaul. *Gallūs, ī*, m.

Gem. *Gemmā, ae*, f.

General. *Dux, dūcīs*, m. and f.

Gift. *Dōnūm, ī*, n.

Glory. *Glōriā, ae*, f.

Gold. *Aurūm, ī*, n.

Golden. *Aureūs, ā, ūm.*

Good. *Bōnūs, ā, ūm.*

Goodness. *Bōnūtās, bōnūtātīs, f.*

Govern. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.*

Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*

Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*

Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*

Guard. *Custōdiō, irē, iwi, itūm.*

II.

Had. *Oj̄en the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*

Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.*

Happy. *Bēdūs, ā, ūm.*

Have. *Hābeō, hābērē, hābiā, hābitūm.*

Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.

He, she, it. *Is, eā, id; illē, illā, illād.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.

He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

Hear. *Audiō, irē, iwi, itūm.*

High. *Altūs, altā, altūm.*

Himself. *Suī (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*

His. *Suās, ā, ūm.*

Hope (verb). *Spērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

Hope (noun). *Spēs, spētī, f.*

Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*

Hundred. *Centūm.* See 175, 2.

I.

I. *Egō, mī.* See 184.

In. *In, prep. with abl.*

In behalf of. *Prō, prep. with abl.*

Instruct. *Erūdiō, irē, iwi, itūm.*

Instructor. *Praceptōr, praceptōrīs, m.*

Into. *In, prep. with acc.*

Invite. *Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*

Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*

It. See he, she, it.

Italy. *Itāliā, ae, f.*

J. *J.*

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdīcīs, m. and f.*

Justice. *Justītiā, ae, f.*

K.

Keep one's word. *Fidēm servārē.*

See p. 74, note 4.

Kindly. *Bēignē, adv.*

King. *Rex, rēgīs, m.*

Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

L.

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*

Latinus. *Lātinūs, ī, m.*

Lavinia. *Lārinīa, ae, f.*

Law. *Lex, lēgīs, f.*

Lead. *Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm.*

Lead back. *Rēdūcō, rēdūcērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.*

Lead forth. *Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, eductūm.*

Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I, 2.

Leader. *Dux, dūcīs, m. and f.*

Letter. *Epistōlā, ae, f.*

Liberate. *Libērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*

Like. *Similīs, cī.*

Love. *Amō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Mācēdōniā, ae, f.*

Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnīs, m.* *Vīr, virī, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.

Many. *Multī, ae, ā, plur.*

May, can. *Signs of the Present Subjunctive.*

May have, can have. *Signs of the Perfect Subjunctive.*

Me. See I.

Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, could, would, should. <i>Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.</i>	Please. <i>Plāceō, plācērē, plāciū,</i> <i>plācītūm.</i>	
Might have, could have, would have, should have. <i>Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.</i>	Pleasing. <i>Grātūs, ā, ūm.</i>	
Mind. <i>Anūmūs, ī, m.</i>	Pleasure. <i>Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f.</i>	
Moat. <i>Fossā, ae, f.</i>	Plough. <i>Arō, ārārē, ārārī, ārātūm.</i>	
Money. <i>Pēcūniā, ae, f.</i>	Plunder (verb). <i>Spōliō, ārē, ārī,</i> <i>ātūm.</i>	
Month. <i>Mensīs, mensīs, m.</i>	Practise. <i>Excrecō, excrecērē, excrecū,</i> <i>excrecītūm.</i>	
More. <i>Sign of the Comparative degree.</i> See 160.	Praise (verb). <i>Laudō, ārē, ārī,</i> <i>ātūm.</i>	
Most. <i>Sign of the Superlative degree.</i> See 160.	Praise (noun). <i>Laus, laudis, f.</i>	
Mound. <i>Aggēr, aggērīs, m.</i>	Precept. <i>Praeceptām, ī, n.</i>	
Mountain. <i>Mons, montīs, m.</i>	Predict. <i>Praedicō, praedīcērē, praedīcū,</i> <i>praedīctūm.</i>	
Much. <i>Multūm, adv.</i>	Present (noun). <i>Dōnūm, ī, n.</i>	
My. <i>Mēs, ā, ūm.</i> See 185.	Publius. <i>Publiūs, ī, m.</i>	
<i>N.</i>		
Name. <i>Nōmēn, nōmīnīs, n.</i>	Punish. <i>Pūniō, īrē, īrī, ītūm.</i>	
Nightingale. <i>Luscīnīā, ae, f.</i>	Pupil. <i>Discīpūlūs, ī, m.</i>	
Noble. <i>Nōbīlīs, ē.</i>	Put to flight. <i>Fūgō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.</i>	
Not. <i>Nōn, adv.</i> Interrogative, <i>nōnnē.</i>	<i>Q.</i>	
<i>O.</i>		
Obey. <i>Pāreō, pārērē, pāruī, pārī-</i> <i>tūm.</i>	Queen. <i>Rēgīnā, ae, f.</i>	
Observe. <i>Servō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.</i>	<i>R.</i>	
Occupy. <i>Occūpō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.</i>	Receive. <i>Accīpiō, accīpērē, accēpī,</i> <i>acceptūm.</i>	
Of. <i>Denoted by the Genitive.</i> See 393.	Reign, royal authority. <i>Regnūm,</i> <i>ī, n.</i>	
Of itself. <i>Pēr sē.</i>	Renowned. <i>Clārūs, ā, ūm.</i>	
On. <i>Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.</i> See 426.	Reside. <i>Hābitō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.</i>	
One. <i>Unūs, ā, ūm.</i> See 176.	Rhine. <i>Rhēnūs, ī, m.</i>	
Oration. <i>Orātiō, orātiōnīs, f.</i>	River. <i>Amnīs, amnīs, m.</i>	
Orator. <i>Orātōr, orātōrīs, m.</i>	Roman. <i>Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.</i>	
Our. <i>Nostēr, trā, trūm.</i>	Roman, a Roman. <i>Rōmānūs, ī, m.</i>	
<i>P.</i>		
Parent. <i>Pārens, pārentīs, m. and f.</i>	Rome. <i>Rōma, ae, f.</i>	
Philip. <i>Philippūs, ī, m.</i>	Romulus. <i>Rōmūlūs, ī, m.</i>	
Pisistratus. <i>Pisistrātūs, ī, m.</i>	Rule. <i>Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.</i>	
<i>S.</i>		
Safety. <i>Sālūs, sālūtīs, f.</i>		
Same. <i>Idēm, ēdēm, ūdēm.</i> See 186.		
Say. <i>Dīcō, dīcērē, dīxī, dictūm.</i>		

- Save. *Servō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
- Seipio. *Scipiō, Scipiōnīs, m.*
- Senator. *Sēnātōr, sēnātōris, m.*
- Serve. *Serviō, īrē, īvī, ītūm.*
- Servius. *Serviūs, ū, m.*
- Setting. *Ocēasūs, ūs, m.*
- Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
- Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
- Shepherd. *Pastōr, pastōris, m.*
- Should, should have. See *might, might have.*
- Show. *Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
- Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*
- Silent. See *be silent.*
- Silver. *Argentūm, ī, n.*
- Sing. *Cantō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
- Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*
- Six. *Sex.* See 175, 2.
- Slave. *Servūs, ī, m.*
- Sleep. *Dormiō, īrē, īvī, ītūm.*
- Soldier. *Milēs, mūlītis, m.*
- Somebody, some one. *Alīquās, ālīquā, ālīquād, or ālīquōd.* See 191.
- Son. *Filiūs, ū, m.*
- Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*
- Song. *Carmēn, earmēnūs, n.*
- Speak. *Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm.*
- State. *Civitās, eīvitātis, f.*
- Strengthen. *Firmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
- Sun. *Sōl, sōlīs, m.*
- Sunset. *Ocēasūs sōlīs.*
- Sword. *Glādiūs, ū, m.*
- T.**
- Take. *Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm.*
- Take by storm. *Expugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
- Tarquin. *Tarquiniūs, ū, m.*
- Tell. *Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm.*
- Temple. *Templūm, ī, n.*
- Ten. *Dēcēm.* See 175, 2.
- Terrify. *Terreō, terrērē, terrūi, terrētūm.*
- Than. *Quām.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.
- That. *Illē, illā, illēl.* See 186.
- The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
- Their. *Suūs, ī, ūm.*
- Then. *Tūm, adv.*
- Thing. *Rēs, rētī, f.*
- This. *Hīe, haec, hōc.* See 186.
- Three. *Trēs, triā.* See 176.
- Time. *Tempūs, tempōris, n.*
- To. *Ad, īn, preps. with acc.* *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384.
- True. *Vērūs, ī, ūm.*
- Truth. *Vērūm, ī, n.*
- Tullia. *Tulliā, ae, f.*
- Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* See 176.
- Tyrant. *Tyrrannūs, ī, m.*
- U.**
- Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*
- Useful. *Utilis, ē.*
- V.**
- Valor. *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*
- Valuable. *Prētiōsūs, ī, ūm.*
- Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.
- Victoria. *Victōriā, ae, f.*
- Victory. *Victōriā, ae, f.*
- Violate. *Violō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
- Virtue. *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*
- W.**
- Walk. *Ambūdō, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*
- War. *Bellūm, ī, n.*

Way. *Viā, ae, f.*

Well. *Bēnē, adv.*

Who, which (relative). *Quī, quae, quōd.* See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative)?

Quis, quae, quid? quū, quae, quōd? See 188.

Wide. *Lātūs, ā, ūm.*

Wife. *Conjux, conjūḡs, f.*

Will, will have. See *shall, shall have.*

Winter. *Hiem̄s, hiēm̄s, f.*

Wisdom. *Sāpientiā, ae, f.*

Wise. *Sāpiens, sāpientiā.*

With. *Cum, prep. with abl.* Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

Word. *Verbūm, i, n.* To keep one's word, *fidēm servār̄c.* See p. 74, note 4.

Would, would have. See *might, might have.*

Wound. *Vulnērō, ārē, ārī, ātūm.*

Write. *Scribō, scribēr̄c, scripsi, scriptūm.*

Y.

Year. *Annūs, i, m.*

You. *Tū, tuī.* See 184.

Your. *Tuūs, ā, ūm; vestēr̄, vestrā, vestrūm.*

Yourself. *Tū, tū ipsē.*

18

3

June 19th 1917





Harkness's Latin Grammar
{ *U. S. Latin Grammar* } Latin reading
(*Sacra Historia*) work
W. C. CHEWETT & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., New York Free Academy.

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this a useful Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features.

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, Principal Cambridge High School.

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

From Mr. D. B. HAGER, Prince Eliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.

"This is, in my opinion, by far the best Latin Grammar ever published. It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive, and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

100

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON and Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, of the Wesleyan University.

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

From Mr. H. A. PRATT, Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

From Mr. I. F. CADY, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

From Messrs. S. THURBER and T. B. STOCKWELL, Public High School, Providence.

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

From Mr. C. B. GOFF, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, University of Vermont.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

From Mr. H. ORCUTT, Glenicood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, Principal of Franklin Academy.

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use. In the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

From Mr. C. C. CHASE, Principal of Lonsdale High School.

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

From Mr. J. KIRKALL, High School, Dorchester, Mass.

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."

